

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY-INDEX

The Chinese characters for a term are given only in the main entry. The names of a few persons not mentioned in the text appear in the index because of the importance of their relationship to another person. For these entries, ** follows the name with an explanation of who they are. For example, under “Chu Chan-chi, consorts of” is found “Wu, consort (mother of Chu Ch’i-yü) **”.

- A-ha-ch’u 阿哈出 267
- A-la 阿刺 322
- A-lu-t’ai, *see* Arughtai
- A-shih 阿什 River 266
- A-tzu 阿資 160
- Abahai 皇太極 616–18, 628–9, 636
as Hung Taiji 616
- Abatai 阿巴泰 636–7
- academicians of the Hanlin
Academy (*hsüeh-shih*, *Han-lin*
hsüeh-shih), *see* Hanlin
- Academy, academicians of
academies (*shu-yüan*) 779
- Academy of Judicial Review (*Shen-*
hsing yüan) 151
- Acapulco 627
- Acuña, Don Pedro Bravo de 561
- address [to the emperor] (*piao*) 718,
728, 767
- Aden 阿丹 235–6, 302; 234 map 11
- administration 2–6, 11, 362–4
keeping of records for 736–46
publications for 754–5
sources for history of 733–5,
755–6, 763, 764–5, 766–9,
776–7, 777–81, 791–2, 794,
- 795, 796, 797, 806, 807, 808,
812
- administration; *see also* officials
in the Hung-wu reign 49, 52–7,
70–1, 127, 130–43, 146–9,
149–57
- in the Chien-wen reign 186–93
- in the Yung-lo reign 144, 189,
208–12, 237–43; 143 map 13
- in the Hung-hsi reign 279–84,
792–3
- in the Hsüan-te reign 286–8,
291–8, 792–3
- in the Cheng-t’ung reign 305–9,
325–31
- in the Ching-t’ai reign 331–9
- in the T’ien-shun reign 340–2
- in the Ch’eng-hua reign 346,
348–51
- in the Hung-chih reign 346,
348–51
- in the Cheng-te reign 404–18,
439
- in the Chia-ching reign 441–50,
465–6, 482–8, 488–510
- in the Lung-ch’ing reign 512–14

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

861

- in the Wan-li reign 514–56,
585–90
in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 591–5
in the T'ien-ch'i reign 595–9,
605–11
in the Ch'ung-chen reign 611–14,
618–21, 627–31, 634–7
in the Shun interregnum 638–40
in the Southern Ming; in the
Hung-kuang reign 643–9; in
the Lu regency 669–70; in the
Lung-wu reign 666–74; in the
Yung-li reign 676–92, 701–10
*Admonitions to bureaucrats (Kuan
chen)* 303
Afghanistan 258, 224 map9
Africa 8, 183, 235–6, 271, 302, 770;
234 map11
agriculture
historical sources for 776, 777,
802
in the Hung-wu reign 123, 146,
170–1
in the Chien-wen reign 183, 184,
190
in the Hung-hsi reign 281
in the Hsüan-te reign 294–8
in the Cheng-t'ung reign 309–14,
317–20
in the Hung-chih reign 354, 399
in the Cheng-te reign 508, 509
in the Chia-ching reign 508, 509
in the Wan-li reign 545, 551, 559
in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 586–7,
590
in the Southern Ming 723
in the early Ch'ing 708
see also grain; military colonies,
military farms
- Aḥmad 阿黑馬 395 n22
Aisingga 愛星阿 710
Ajashiri 阿札失里
as Liao, Prince of 165
1391 rebellion of 165
- Ajige 阿濟格 629, 656–8, 684
Aksu 阿速 257; 224 map9
Alagakkonāra 艾烈苦奈兒 233
Alexander VII, Pope 692
Allah 563; *see also* Islam
Altan 倭答 393, 398, 467, 471–7,
484, 520, 524, 557, 558, 801
altars of state
construction of 137, 457–61, 485
to Earth 57, 108, 109, 111, 118–
19, 130, 137, 458–9
to Heaven 57, 108, 109, 111, 118–
19, 123, 130, 137, 241, 417,
447, 458–9, 541; 240 map12
to Hsien-nung, the spirit of
agriculture 116
to imperial ancestors 108, 111,
119, 123, 123–5, 449, 457–61;
243 map13
to the spirit of grain 111, 139; 243
map13
to the spirit of the soil 111, 137;
243 map13
to the spirits of mountains and
rivers 122; 240 map12
see also Ancestral Temple; ritual;
ritual sacrifice
- Amba beile 大貝勒 582–3
Amherst, William Pitt 571
Amin taiji 阿敏(敏) 台吉 (nephew
of Nurhaci) 582, 601, 616–
17
amnesty
in the Yüan 21, 30, 31, 32
in the Hung-wu reign 57, 142,
172
in the Chien-wen reign 181
in the Hung-hsi reign 278, 280
in the Chia-ching reign 456, 456
n18, 468, 469
in the early Ch'ing 661, 718
- Amoy 廈門, *see* Hsia-men
Amur 阿木爾 River 266, 629
An, Prince of 安 121 maps

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

862

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- An account of the campaign “to clear away the disasters in response [to Heaven’s will,” see *Feng t’ien ching nan chi*]*
- An-ch’ a ssu 按察司 (Provincial Surveillance Office) 141
- An-ch’ing 安慶 65–6, 69, 78, 81, 429, 430, 645; 429 map21
- An-feng 安豐 43, 51, 67, 68, 82, 89, 93
- an-fu* 安撫 (pacifying and soothing) 292
- An-hua 安化 409
- An-hua, Prince of 安化王, *see Chu Chih-fan*
- An-lu 安陸 90; 121 maps; as princely estate 440, 446, 447
- An-lung 安龍 705–6; 664 map29, 696 map30
- An-p’ing 安平 694, 712, 724 n83
- An-shun 安順 144
- An-tsung 安宗, *see Chu Yu-sung*
- An-yang 安陽 113
- Analects [of Confucius]* 122
see also Four Books
- ancestor (*tsung*) 273
- ancestor worship 57
- ancestors
imperial 124–5, 137, 257–61, 273, 479
- Ancestral injunctions* 118, 132–3, 168, 174–8, 187, 191–2, 195, 216, 229, 289–90, 359, 367, 441–2, 442 n3, 668, 689
- as *Huang Ming tsu hsün* 358
- as *Huang Ming tsu hsün lu* 166 n176
- as *Tsu hsün* 168
- as *Tsu hsün lu* 118
- ancestral temple 444
- Ancestral Temple (*T’ai-miao*) 111, 124, 330, 417, 426, 427, 457–61, 610; 110 map4, 234 map13
- Anhwei 安徽 200, 661 n21
- as Chu Yüan-chang’s home 11, 44–6, 109, 112–13, 117, 118, 123–4, 161, 163, 173
- considered as location for capital 118
- droughts in 59
- historical sources for 776
- and household registration 123
- Ming conquest of 92
- rebellions in 20, 62, 107
- animals
historical sources on 221, 775, 776
- for imperial entertainment 405
- as tribute gifts 235
see also antelopes; camels; fish; giraffes; horses; lions; ostriches; sheep; zebras
- annalistic pattern [of historical writing] (*pien-nien*) 727, 747, 756–60, 773, 782, 798, 801
- Annam 安南 166, 558
annexed to China 8, 183, 205
as Chiao-chih 230, 716
Chinese campaign in 307, 470–1
pacification of 206, 229–31, 251, 256, 275, 282
resistance to Chinese control 284, 289–91, 302, 304
sources for 773, 794
234 map11
see also foreign relations, with Annam; Vietnam
- Annam, king of, *see Lê Lo’i*
- annual review (*lu-ch’iu*) 367–8
- antelopes, in tribute trade 235
- anti-Tung-lin, *see* Che party; Ch’i party; Ch’u party; evaluations, personnel; Hsüan-K’un party; Tung-lin Academy; Tung-lin party
- aphrodisiacs 350, 351, 453, 479–82;
see also immortality, elixirs of
- appointments, record of 747, 763

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

863

- Arabia 302
 Arabic 771
 archeology 9
 archery 122, 399, 403, 404, 414, 425,
 514
 architecture, historical sources for
 775
 archivist (*tien-pu*) 736
 Armenia 258; 224 map9
 armor
 as tribute gift 300, 411, 426
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 719
 arms 15, 25, 396, 699–700
 historical sources on 771, 772,
 774
 arsenic 273, 480
 art, studies on 795; *see also*
 calligraphy; painting
 artillery 247, 321, 334, 374–6
 see also Artillery Camp;
 garrisons; military affairs
 Artillery Camp (*Shen-chi ying*) 248
 artisans 183, 238, 240–1, 309, 349,
 438, 454, 485
 artists, biographies of 763, 778
 Arughtai 阿魯台 316–17
 as chancellor to Prince Bunyashiri
 226–8, 231, 264–5, 298–300
 as Ho-ning, Prince of 226
 Ashikaga shōgun 足利將軍, *see*
 Yoshimitsu
 assaying shops (*yin-hao*) 585
 assimilation
 by Chinese of Mongol culture
 21–2
 by Mongols of Chinese culture 16
 astronomy, records of 737, 775
 Atai 阿台 (太) 575
 Attack with the Club case 550, 554–
 6, 609
 attribution [of authorship], false
 758–9, 809
 audience records (*ch'i-chü chu*), *see*
 diaries of activity and repose
- Ava 157, 314–16, 708–10; 696
 map30; *see also* Burma
 Ayurbarwada 愛育黎拔力八達, 16
 as Jen-tsung 16
 Ayushiridara 愛猷識里達臘 22–3,
 95, 97, 100, 102, 103, 120, 139
 Azerbaijan 258; 224 map9
- bachelor [in Han-lin Academy]
 (*hsiu-ts'ai*) 743
 Bacon, Francis, comment on rulers
 508
 Badan 把丹 399
bakufu 幕府 (Japanese military
 government) 699–700
 banditry and bandits 9, 29, 386, 399,
 490–510, 604–5, 632, 646, 652,
 663–6, 671–2, 675, 677
 defined and compared with
 rebellion and rebels 18, 29,
 376–7
 female 381–2
 historical sources for 735
 banditry and bandits
 in the late Yüan: Chap.1, 385
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 312–14
 in the Cheng-te reign 412–14,
 418, 425–7
 in the Chia-ching reign 487,
 490–505
 in the Wan-li reign 525, 531
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 615–16
 in the Southern Ming 663–6,
 671–2, 675; in the Hung-
 kuang reign 652, 655; in the
 Lung-wu reign 669, 671–2; Lu
 regency 694; in the Shao-wu
 reign 678; in the Yung-li reign
 680, 687, 688–9, 704
 banks, *see* proto-banks
 Banner, Plain Blue 679
 banner system 576, 582, 663, 679,
 685, 686, 691, 718; *see also*
 Mongols

- barley 473
 Bars-bolod 巴爾斯博羅特 467
 barus camphor, and death of Chu Ti 272
 Basalawarmi 把匝刺瓦爾密 25, 72, 143–6; 19 map2
 as Liang, Prince of 25, 143, 144
 basic annals (*pen-chi*) [section of official histories] 727, 757, 758, 787, 789
 Batangas 561
 Batavia 722–3
 Battak (Pai-hua kuo) 168 n178
 Batu Temür 把都帖木兒 206
 as Wu Yün-ch'eng 206
 Batü Möngke 巴圖蒙古克 398, 466–8, 798
 as Da-Yüan k'o-han 398
 as Dayan-khan 398
 Bayan Temür 伯顏帖木兒 130
 beans
 in tribute trade 476
 as substitute for rice ration 637
 bell tower 241
 belles lettres 221; *see also* literature
 Bengali 檳葛利 235; 234 map11
 benzoin in tribute trade 505
 Berke Bukha 別兒怯不花 60
 Beshbalig, *see* Bishbalik
 Bhamo 八莫 314, 708; 696 map30
 bibliography (*mu-lu hsüeh*) [as field of study] 735
 Big Rattan Gorge (*Ta-t'eng hsia*) 377–80
 biographical collections (*chuang-chi*) 728, 730, 732–3, 755, 760–3, 765, 775, 777, 778, 790
 biographies (*lieh-chuan*) [section of official histories] 727, 757, 758, 760, 787
 biography [type of writing] 784
 historical 761–2
 major discussion of 760–3
 of Ming emperors 9
 social 761, 812
 birthdays, celebration of 337, 428, 432, 462, 507, 546
 Bishbalik 別失八里 257, 258, 259; 224 map9
 blood line succession (*ssu*) 444–5
 Bolai 李來 399–400
 Bolin Temür 李林帖木兒 178
 Bolo 博洛 660, 675, 679
 Bolod Temür 李羅帖木兒 21, 22–3, 95–6
Book of documents 147, 152, 403 n1, 440 n1
Book of poetry 461
 books
 collecting of 778, 809
 damage to 813
 as gifts to emperors 673
 as gifts to foreign states 268, 301
 manufacture of 350
 see also printing and publishing
 border, Mongolia–China 99, 100, 103, 106, 130, 142, 205, 221–9, 237–8, 264–6, 268, 276, 292–3, 298–300, 302, 316–31, 371, 389–402, 468–70, 471–9
 border defense command (*pien-ch'en*) 248–9
 borders, defense of 770
 in the early Ming 7–9, 25, 99, 100, 103, 106, 129, 161, 167, 170–2, 178, 181, 321
 in the Yung-lo reign 5, 7, 183, 191, 222–31, 244–5, 248–9, 263, 320–1
 in the Hsüan-te reign 286, 292–3, 299–300
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 314–31
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 332
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 370–402
 in the Hung-chih reign 370–402
 in the Cheng-te reign 403, 409, 414–15
 in the Chia-ching reign 450–3,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

865

- 455, 466–79, 483, 484, 485–7,
490–505
in the Wan-li reign 514, 519, 520,
525, 534, 552, 557–84, 588–91
in the T’ien-ch’i reign 599–602,
611
in the Ch’ung-chen reign 617–19,
627–31, 634–40
historical sources for 768, 769,
771–3, 774, 775, 777, 780, 794,
798, 802
borders, going out beyond (*ch’u-*
sai) 395
Borneo, *see* Brunei
Boym, Michel 692
Branch Secretariat (*Hsing chung-*
shu sheng) 112–13, 127, 136–7
Brava 不刺哇 236; 234 map11
'Bri-khung, Tibetan religious order
261
bricks 238
bridges 239
brocade
in tribute trade 271
production of 366
bronze drums 735
Brunei 淳泥 (Po-ni kuo, Borneo)
116, 168 n178, 302; *see also*
foreign relations, with Brunei
Budapest 585
Buddhism
Ch’an 114, 533
Maitreya 28, 38, 39, 43, 44, 45,
557
monks 38–9, 45, 146–8, 193,
201–3, 204, 261, 270, 300, 350,
351, 414, 417–18, 438, 499,
653–4, 663
Tantric 414
Tibetan 261–4, 350, 414, 417–18
Zen 270
Buddhism
in the late Yüan 18, 42, 43, 60
in the Hung-wu reign 114–15,
128, 139, 146–8, 167, 789
in the Chien-wen reign 184, 190
in the Yung-lo reign 221
in the Ching-t’ai reign 333
in the Ch’eng-hua reign 349–50
in the Hung-chih reign 351, 353
in the Cheng-te reign 414
in the Wan-li reign 514, 533, 557
see also Buddhist Affairs
Academy; Central Buddhist
Registry
Buddhist Affairs Academy (*Shan-*
shih yüan) 114
Buddhist images in tribute trade 268
Buddhist relics (*sarīra*) 268
Buddhist temples 32, 44, 233, 700,
746
historical sources for 778, 779
Buddhists, biographies of 762
Bunyashiri 本雅失里 226
Bureau of Evaluations [in Ministry
of Personnel] 538, 539
Bureau of Historiography (*Shih-*
kuan) 736–46, 753–5
Bureau of Remonstrance (*Chien*
yüan) 142, 148, 731
burial
of emperors 201, 247, 273, 283,
597
of nobility 353
Burma 緬甸 314–16, 589
on China’s border 1, 8
1582–83 campaign in 580
as Mien-tien 708–9
and the Yung-li emperor 707–10
696 map30
see also foreign relations, with
Burma
Burma Road 314
Bushugtu 卜失兔 (卜失兔) 557
Buyur Lake 捕魚兒海 159, 161, 173
Byang-chub rGyal-mtshan 262
calendar

- calendar (*cont.*)
 as gifts to foreign states 271
 historical sources for 775
 Northern Red Turban 55
 in the Southern Ming 694, 707
 n62, 723
 Southern Red Turban 40
 used by Chu Yüan-chang 55, 56,
 57, 71, 98, 108, 201
 Yüan 37, 166–7
 Calendar of the Great Unification
 (*Ta t'ung li*) 108
 Calicut 卡利古 233, 235–6, 302; 234
 map11
 calligraphy 440, 441 n2, 471, 514,
 546, 775
 Cambodia 166, 229, 770
 see also foreign relations, with
 Cambodia
 camels 129, 235, 257, 261
 Camp of the Five Armies (*Wu-chün*
 ying) 248
 Camp of the Four Guards (*Ssu-wei*
 ying) 248
 Camp of Three Thousand (*San-*
 ch'ien ying) 248
 camphor, *see* barus camphor
 Camul, *see* Hami
 canal 335
 see also Chia Canal; grain,
 transport of; Grand Canal
 cangue 407
 cannibalism 615, 617, 631, 632, 686
 cannons 160, 227, 490, 657, 698
 Canton 廣州 24, 377, 585
 Ch'ing attacks on and conquest
 of 679, 691, 692, 714
 as Ho Chen's base 72
 and Jesuits 562
 and the Lung-wu court 678
 as Maritime Trade Intendancy
 269
 and Ming loyalists 680, 704, 714
 and Portuguese 7, 433, 434
 and 1368 surrender to the Ming
 97
 and trade 8, 169, 491, 559–60,
 631
 and western embassies to 802
 224 map9, 234 map11, 497
 map23, 659 map28, 696 map30,
 713 map31
 capital cities
 historical sources for 788, 794
 location of, in the Ming 114, 118,
 164, 182, 205, 211, 227, 237–
 44, 273–6, 282–3, 285–6, 295,
 318, 325–6
 location of, in the Southern Ming
 641ff, 660–1, 663, 671, 705,
 706, 723
 see also Nanking; Peking; Red
 Turban rebellions
 capital evaluation (*ching-ch'a*)
 605–8
 Capital Guards (*ching-wei*) 244,
 245–7, 373, 643, 688
 capital training camps (*ying* or
 ching-ying) 244, 247–8
 carpentry, and Chu Yu-chiao 595
 cash, *see* copper coins
 castration 306, 368–9
 Catholicism 560–2, 692
 see also Jesuits
 catty (weight unit, *chin*) xxi
 cavalry 247, 321, 329, 334, 374–6,
 379, 410, 413, 418, 421, 452,
 471–3, 566, 576, 582–3, 669,
 675, 683, 711, 721
 see also Camp of the Four
 Guards; garrisons; horses;
 military affairs; tea – horse
 markets
 cavalry general (*yu-chi chiang-*
 chiun) 249
 Cavite 561
 Censorate, Chief Surveillance
 Office (*Tu-ch'a yüan*), and

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

867

- censors 767
 in the Hung-wu reign 138, 141, 148, 151, 162
 in the Chien-wen reign 188
 in the Yung-lo reign 242
 in the Hsüan-te reign 291–2, 795
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 332, 338
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 345, 365, 367, 369–70, 388
 in the Hung-chih reign 374
 in the Cheng-te reign 408, 419–20, 423, 424, 428
 in the Chia-ching reign 448, 469, 479, 483, 493, 494, 495, 498ff, 503, 506
 in the Wan-li reign 515, 518, 523, 525, 526, 529, 530, 537–9, 548, 549, 553, 561, 575, 581, 590
 in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 594, 597, 598
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 599, 605, 606, 609
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 615, 619
 in the Southern Ming; in the Hung-kuang reign 647, 648, 649, 652; in the Lung-wu reign 668; in the Yung-li reign 687, 691
 studies on 795, 807
 censorship
 in the Ch'ing 758, 765, 781–2, 809, 812–13, 814
 in the Ming 786, 790
 Central Asia
 historical sources for 772–3, 798
see also Hami; Herat; Samarkand; Silk Road
 Central Buddhist Registry (*Seng-lu ssu*) 146
 Central Taoist Registry (*Tao-lu ssu*) 146
 centurion (commander of 100 soldiers) 368
 ceremony 417, 421, 461, 513, 645
 historical sources for 754
see also altars of state; ritual; ritual sacrifice
 Ceylon 234, 235–6, 302; 234 map11
 Cha Chi-tso 賈繼佐 757
 Chagatai 察合台 Mongols 12, 393
 Chaghan Nor 察罕湖 100
 Chaghan Temür 察罕帖木兒 20–2, 32, 43, 67–8, 82, 90, 93, 94–5, 102
 as Li Ch'a-han 20
 historical sources on 785
 Chahar 察哈爾 43, 316
chai chiao 瘡醮 (intercessory prayer ceremonies) 355
chai-chieh 瘡戒 (observe fast) 125
 Ch'ai Shan 柴山 300
 Champa (Chan-ch'eng kuo) 140–1, 166, 168 n178, 229, 230, 233, 234, 234 map11
see also foreign relations, with Champa
 Chan-ch'eng kuo 141
Champa
 Chan Hok-lam (Ch'en Hsüeh-lin) 陳學林 795, 797
 Chan Hui 顛微
 appointed censor 148
 and Lan Yü case 172
 and Li Shan-ch'ang 162
Chan-shih fu 詹事府, *see* Household Administration of the Heir Apparent
 Chan T'ung 顛同 148, 737
 Chan Wing-tsit 陳榮捷 794
 Ch'an 禪 (J. Zen), *see* Buddhism
 chancellor (*ch'eng-hsiang*) 187
chang �丈 (length unit) xxi
 Chang 張, empress (r. 1529–34, d. 1536), *see* Chu Hou-ts'ung, consorts of
 Chang 張, empress, empress dowager, grand empress

- Chang (*cont.*)
 dowager (d. 1442), *see* Chu
 Kao-chih, consorts of
 Chang 張, lady, empress, empress
 dowager (d. 1541), *see* Chu
 Yu-t'ang, consorts of
 Chang Ch'a 張差 554–6
 Chang Ch'ang 張昶 283
 Chang Cheng-ch'ang 張正常 114,
 120
 Chang-chia k'ou 張家口 227; 225
 map 10
 as Kalgan 227, 321
 Chang Chia-yin 張佳胤 523
 Chang Chia-yü 張家玉 680–1
 Chang Ching 張經 496–9, 517
 Chang Ching-hsin 張鏡心 773
 Chang-ch'iü 章丘 356
 Chang-chou 漳州, Fukien 26, 27,
 494, 679, 694, 695, 712, 714,
 721; 497 map 23
 Chang Chung 張中 (fl. 1362–70)
 120
 Chang Chung 張忠 (fl. 1520) 434
 Chang Chü-cheng 張居正 546, 551,
 552, 577, 801
 as Chu I-chün's tutor 514–15
 and Feng Pao 596
 and fiscal issues 589
 historical sources for 804
 major discussion of 518–32
 memorial presented by 738, 738
 n44, 739–40
 and tax reform 297–8
 and the Tung-lin party 532–7,
 550
 Wen T'i-jen compared with 620
 Chang Ch'üan 張鉉 590
 Chang 張 family 565
 Chang Feng 張鳳 339
 Chang Fu 張輔 206, 239, 307, 325
 and 1406 Annam campaign 230–1
 as Ying (duke of) 307
 Chang Fu-ching 張孚敬, *see* Chang
 Ts'ung
 Chang Han 張瀚 523, 766
 Chang Ho-ling 張鶴齡 353–5,
 463–4
 as Shou-ning, marquis of 353
 Chang Ho-ming 張鶴鳴 601
 Chang Hsieh 張燮 773
 Chang Hsien-chung 張獻忠 629–
 35, 651, 676–7, 681, 701–5
 Chang Hsüan 張萱 765
 Chang Hsüeh-yen 張學顏 520, 523,
 535
 Chang Huang 章潢 775
 Chang Huang-ti 章皇帝, *see* Chu
 Chan-chi
 Chang Huang-yen 張煌言 720–1,
 724
 Chang I 張益 (1395–1449) 325
 Chang I 張疑 (fl. 1603) 561–2
 Chang I-ning 張以寧 116
 Chang Jui 張銳 427–8, 432, 438
 Chang K'ai 張楷 313
chang ku 嘉故 (historical
 precedents) 449
see also historical precedents
 Chang Kuo-wei 張國維 667, 776
 Chang Liang-pi 張良弼 23
 Chang Lu 張歎 789
 Chang Luan 張麟 353
 as Ch'ang-kuo, duke of 353
 as Shou-ning, earl of 353
 as Shou-ning, marquis of 353
 Chang Ming-chen 張名振 675, 693,
 697–8, 716, 718, 718 n77, 720
 Chang Ping-lin 章炳麟 813
 Chang Shen-yen 張慎言 646
 Chang Sheng 張昇 283
 Chang Shih-ch'eng 張士誠
 as Ch'eng, King of the Great
 Chou 31
 historical sources for 785
 major discussion of 88–94
 rebellion of 20, 26, 29, 30–5, 36,
 43, 47, 51, 56–7, 62, 63–4, 66,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

869

- 68, 71–2, 74, 77, 79, 80, 82
as Wu, Prince of 34, 55, 64, 88
- Chang Shih-hsin 張士信 35, 64, 80,
92; 19 map2
- Chang Shih-te 張士德 32–3, 35, 64;
19 map2
- chang-shou i-ying wen-chi*
掌收一應文籍 (safekeeping of
documents) 743
- Chang Ssu-wei 張四維 528
memorial written by 737–8, 738
n44, 739–40
- Chang-te 章德 113
- Chang T'ien-yu 張天祐 47, 69–70
- Chang Ting-pien 張定邊 78, 87, 89
- Chang Tsan 張贊 382–4
- Chang Ts'un-jen 張存仁 617
- Chang Ts'ung 張璁 446, 453, 455–
8, 461, 463, 468, 493, 745
as Chang Fu-ching 446, 745
- Chang Wu 張武 206
- Chang Yen-ling 張延齡 353–5, 463
as Chien-ch'ang, earl of 353
as Chien-ch'ang, marquis of 353
- Chang Yin 張寅, *see* Li Fu-ta
- Chang Yung 張永 (d. 1457) 339
- Chang Yung 張永 (1465–1529) 408,
410–11, 427, 434–5
- Chang Yü 張雨 772
- Chang Yüeh 張軒 338, 340
- Change of Palace Case (*i-kung an*)
594–5
- ch'ang-ch'eng* 長城 (long walls) 389;
see also Great Wall
- Ch'ang-chou 常州 32, 71, 90, 92; 19
map2, 253 map14
- Ch'ang-hsing 長興 71, 79, 92
- Ch'ang-kuo, duke of 晉國公, *see*
Chang Luan
- Ch'ang-ling 長陵, *see* Chu Ti,
tomb of
- Ch'ang-pai 長白 Mountains 266
- Ch'ang-p'ing 晉平 419; 419 map20
sources on 772
- Ch'ang-sha 長沙 89, 634
as princely estate 162, 171t, 682,
686, 691; 121 maps, 659 map28
- Ch'ang-shu 常熟 32, 33, 71; 19
map2
- Ch'ang Yü-ch'un 常遇春 47, 72, 74,
76–7, 79, 80, 81, 82–3, 85–6,
89, 92, 93, 97, 99–100, 115–18
as duke 107
as Chu Piao's teacher 111–13
- Ch'ang-yüan Islands 長垣島 695,
695 n49; 664 map29
- Change of Palace Case (*i-kung an*)
594–5, 598, 607, 609
- chao* 詔 (imperial order,
proclamation) 738, 767
- Chao, Prince of 趙王, *see* Chu
Kao-sui
- Chao Chi-tsui 趙繼祖 81
- Chao Chih 趙秩 128
- Chao Chih-kao 趙志皋 529, 538
- Chao Chih-lung 趙之龍 658
- Chao-ch'ing 肇慶 562
and Ch'ing troops 704
and the Yung-li court 677, 678,
679, 685–90
659 map28, 664 map29, 696
map30
- Chao-chou 趙州 115
- Chao Chung-chung 趙仲冲 78
- Chao Chü-jen 趙叔任 269
- Chao Chün-yung 趙均用 61, 62, 63,
68
- Chao Fu 趙輔 379
- Chao-hsien 趙縣 115
- Chao Huang-ti 命皇帝, *see* Chu
Kao-chih
- Chao I 趙翼 784
- Chao I chuan* 趙翼傳 784
- Chao Kao 趙高 599
- chao-ling tsou-i* 詔令奏議 (imperial
edicts and memorials) 727
- Chao Ling-yang, *see* Chiu Ling-
yeong

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

870

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Chao Nan-hsing 趙南星 535, 538–9, 545, 598–9, 605, 607
- Chao P'u-sheng 趙普勝 65–6, 69, 74, 77
as Two-sword Chao 65
- Chao shih chien tang lu* 呂行示姦黨錄 (Revelation of the evil faction) 142, 163
- Chao Shu 趙曙 444
as P'u, Prince of 444
as Ying-tsung 444
- Chao tai tien tse* 昭代典則 759
- Chao Te-sheng 趙德勝 76
- Chao Wen-hua 趙文華 498–502
- Chao Yung 趙庸 78
- Ch'ao-chou 潮州 712; 659 map28, 713 map31
- Ch'ao-hsien 朝鮮 (Korea, K. Chosön), *see* Korea
- Ch'ao Lake 築湖, rebels of 65, 69, 71, 74, 78, 83, 105; 121 maps
- ch'ao shen* 朝審 (court review) 367–8
- Che party 浙黨 544, 556
- Che-tung 浙東 (eastern Chekiang) 665
branch secretariat established in 71
- Chekiang 浙江 17, 28, 32, 701
agrarian resources in 711
- Ch'en Yu-ting invades 88
and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 714, 717–19
- Ch'ing penetration of 674, 675, 679, 697, 720
- Chu Yüan-chang subdues 96
and coastal defense 774
and economic prosperity 588
as Fang Kuo-chen's base 64
historical sources for 776, 779
as Hu Ta-hai's base 77
- Li Po-sheng invades 92
and maritime trade 465, 490–510
- Ming loyalists in 812
- natural disasters in 310, 632
- officials in 292, 523, 609
and piracy 614
- rebellions in 78, 312–14, 336, 651
and regent Lu 663, 666–8, 672, 673, 695
- relief for 298 n200
- scholars from 811
- ships from 251
- and taxation 190, 281, 645, 671
- timber from 238
- treasury of 522
- troops from 565, 567
- war provisions from 577
- Yüan recovery of 61
311 map15, 659 map28, 713 map31
- Chekiang party, *see* Che party
- chen* 鎮 (guards [Southern Ming]) 714
- Chen-chiang 鎮江 71, 74
and defense of Nanking 645
fall to Ch'ing of 658
and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 720–1
197 map8, 253 map14, 659 map28, 696 map30, 731 map31
- Chen-chin, Prince 貞金 16
- chen-jen 貞人 (an immortal) 109
- Chen-kuo, duke of 鎮國公, *see* Chu Hou-chao
- chen-shou* 鎮守 (grand defender) 278
- Chen Te-hsiu 貞德秀 218
- Chen-ting 貞定 99, 115, 196
eunuch commissioner to 465
197 map8, 633 map27
- Ch'en 陳 26 (Ch'en Chu ?); *see also* Ch'en Chu
- Ch'en 陳, consort, empress (r. 1522–28, d. 1528), *see* Chu Hou-ts'ung, consorts of
- Ch'en 陳, empress (d. 1596), *see* Chu Tsai-hou, consorts of
- Ch'en Chao-hsien 陳兆先 70

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

871

- Ch'en Ch'eng 陳誠 260, 772, 792
 Ch'en Ch'i-yü 陳奇瑜 622
 Ch'en Chieh 陳炌 523
Ch'en chieh lu 臣戒錄 (Instructions to ministers) 142
 Ch'en Chien 陳建 758
 Ch'en Chih 陳智 282, 289
 as Jung-ch'ang, earl of 282
 Ch'en Chiu-ch'ou 陳九疇 455
 Ch'en-chou 陳州, Honan 252
 Ch'en-chou 辰州, Hunan 144
 Ch'en Chu 陳朱 26
 Ch'en Esen 陳埜先 69, 70
 Ch'en Ho 陳鶴 782
 Ch'en Hsüan 陳瑄 200, 206, 251,
 252, 254
 Ch'en Hsüeh-lin, *see* Chan Hok-lam
 Ch'en Hsün 陳循 308, 326, 333, 339
 Ch'en Hung-fan 陳洪範 652
 Ch'en I 陳鎰 332
 Ch'en Jen-hsi 陳仁錫 734, 769
 Ch'en K'an 陳侃 774
 Ch'en Kuei 陳珪 206, 239, 240
 Ch'en Li 陳理 (son of Ch'en Yu-liang) 85, 101
 as Han, emperor of 85
 Ch'en Lin 陳麟 573
 Ch'en Ning 陳寧 139–41
 Ch'en Pai-sha 陳白沙 730
 Ch'en Pang-fu 陳邦傅 687, 689, 691
 as Kwangsi, duke of 689
 Ch'en Pang-yen 陳邦彥 680–1
 Ch'en Shou-liu 陳壽六 153
 Ch'en Tsu-i 陳祖義 233
 Ch'en Tsu-shou 陳組綏 776
 Ch'en Tzu-chuang 陳子壯 680
 Ch'en Tzu-lung 陳子龍 768, 791,
 793
 Ch'en Wan-yen 陳萬言 461
 Ch'en Wen 陳文 360
 Ch'en Wen-hui 陳文輝 147
 Ch'en Ying 陳瑛 211
 Ch'en Yu-jen 陳友仁 76
 Ch'en Yu-liang 陳友諒 34, 38, 40–
 1, 51, 55, 56, 65–6, 68, 69, 100,
 115, 120; 19 map2
 as Han, emperor of 74
 as Han, Prince of 66
 and the Ming-Han war 71–88
 Ch'en Yu-ting 陳友定 23–4, 29, 65,
 72, 88, 97; 19 map2
cheng 鄭 (rectification) 403 n1
 Cheng 鄭, lady, *see* Chu I-chün,
 consorts of
 Cheng Ch'eng-kung 鄭成功
 as Cheng Sen 667
 and the Hung-kuang emperor 667
 and investiture 714 n23–4
 as Koxinga 667
 and Li Ting-kuo 704, 714
 and the Lung-wu emperor 667
 major discussion of 710–25
 negotiations with the Ch'ing
 715–17
 northward campaigns 717–21
 vs. regent Lu 694–5, 697–8
 retreat to Taiwan 721–5
 rise to power 712–14
 as symbol for Taiwanese 814
 and trade with Japan 699–700
 as Yen-p'ing, Prince of 714
 696 map30
 Cheng Chih-lung 鄭芝龍 (father of
 Cheng Ch'eng-kung) 614, 630,
 710
 and administration of Fukien
 671–6
 and Dutch East India Company
 722
 early career of 666–8
 execution of 724
 and Japan 699, 700
 as Nicholas Iquan 666
 and surrender to the Ch'ing 693–
 5, 715, 716, 717
 Cheng Ching 鄭經 (eldest son of
 Cheng Ch'eng-kung) 724–5

- Cheng Ho 鄭和 8
 expeditions of 183, 213, 232–6,
 256, 270–2, 275, 278, 280, 302,
 773
 historical sources for 791, 794,
 795
 234 map11
- Cheng Ho-sheng 鄭鶴聲 795
- Cheng Hsi 鄭襄 (younger brother
 of Cheng Ching) 724, 725
 as Cheng Shih-hsi 724 n83
- Cheng Hsiao 鄭曉 204, 349, 730,
 751, 757
- Cheng Hung-k'uei 鄭鴻達 (younger
 brother of Cheng Chih-lung)
 665, 666–7, 672, 674, 694
- Cheng I-chün 鄭一鈞 795
- Cheng Jo-tseng 鄭若曾 774, 775
- Cheng Ju-pi 鄭汝璧 772
- Cheng K'ai-yang tsa chu
 鄭開陽雜著 774
- Cheng Kuei-fei 鄭貴妃, *see* Chu
 I-chün, consorts of
- Cheng Lien 鄭聯 (uncle of Cheng
 Ch'eng-kung) 712
- cheng-lu ta chiang-chün* 征虜大將軍
 (barbarian-quelling
 generalissimo) 119
- cheng-pen* 正本 (main copy [of the
 veritable records]) 744
- Cheng Sen 鄭森, *see* Cheng
 Ch'eng-kung
- cheng-shih* 正史 (official or standard
 histories) 727, 757
- Cheng Shih-hsi 鄭世襄, *see* Cheng
 Hsi
- Cheng Shih-li 鄭士利 136
- cheng-shu* 政書 (works on political
 institutions, political
 encyclopedias) 728, 734, 769,
 778
- Cheng-te 正德 reign, *see* Chu Hou-
 chao
- Cheng-ting 正定 115
- Cheng Ts'ai 鄭彩 694–7, 712
- Cheng-t'ung 正統 reign, *see* Chu
 Ch'i-chen
- ch'eng* 成 (perfection) 273
- Ch'eng, King 誠王, *see* Chang Shih-
 ch'eng
- Ch'eng, Prince of 鄭王, *see* Chu
 Ch'i-yü
- Ch'eng-Chu 程朱 218, 450; *see also*
 Ch'eng I; Chu Hsi; neo-
 Confucianism
- ch'eng-hsiang* 函相 (chancellor) 187
- Ch'eng Hsin 程信 381, 383
- Ch'eng-hsüan pu-cheng ssu*
 承宣布政司 (Office for
 Transmitting Policy) 136–7
- Ch'eng-hua 成化 reign, *see* Chu
 Chien-shen
- Ch'eng I 程頤 184, 444, 444 n6,
 449–50
- Ch'eng-kuo, duke of 成國公, *see*
 Chu Neng
- Ch'eng-te 承德 129
- Ch'eng-ti 成帝 (Han dynasty
 emperor) 444
- Ch'eng-ts'u 成祖, *see* Chu Ti
- Ch'eng-ts'u shih lu* 成祖實錄 746
- Chengtu 成都 101, 171t, 418, 585
 as Chang Hsien-chung's
 headquarters 701
- Lolo capture of 602
 1371 seige of 125–7
 19 map2, 121 map5, 126 map6,
 633 map27
- chi* 紀 (chronological records) 757
- chi* 檄 (document type) 767
- chi* 記 (essays on places) 728
- chi* 祀 (sacrifices to the spirit of
 grain) 137
- Chi 紀, lady, empress dowager, *see*
 Chu Chien-shen, consorts of
- Chi-an 吉安 79, 90
- Chi chih lu* 稽制錄 (Study of
 institutions) 173

GLOSSARY – INDEX

873

- Chi-ch'ing 集慶, *see* Nanking
 Chi-chou 鮦州 249, 520
 as border garrison 390 map19
 historical sources for 772
 Chi-hsiao 繼曉 351
 Chi-i Mountain 機易山 561
 Chi Kang 紀綱 214
chi-kang 紀綱 (network) 55
 Chi-nan 濟南 21, 97, 335, 356
 as Chu Ti's stronghold 196
 and Li Ching-lung 198
 1638 Manchu attack on 629
 197 map8, 253 map14
 Chi-ning 濟寧 21, 652
chi-nung ts'ang 濟農倉 (relief granaries) 297
chi-pu 集部 (the division of collected writings) 728
chi-shih chung 紿事中 (supervising secretaries) 152
Chi shih lu 記事錄 787
chi-shih pen-mo 紀事本末 727
chi-wen 祭文 (obituaries) 761
 Ch'i 奔 (a recipient of sacrifices to the spirit of grain) 137
 Ch'i, Prince of 齊王, *see* Chu Fu
 Ch'i Chi-kuang 戚繼光 502–4, 520, 523, 524, 527
ch'i-chü chu 起居注, *see* diaries of activity and repose
ch'i-chü chu chi-shih chung 起居注給事中 (supervising secretary for keeping audience records) 737
 Ch'i-hsing Pass 七星關 707
Ch'i hsiu lei kao 七修類稿 765
 Ch'i-hua Gate 齊化門 of Peking 113
 Ch'i-men 邇門 county 123
 Ch'i-men 邇門 Mountain 200
 Ch'i 齊 party (Shantung party) 544
 Ch'i Shih-chiao 亢詩敎 547 n11
 Ch'i-shui 蒼水 27, 28, 40, 61
 Ch'i T'ai 齊泰 186–9, 192, 195, 204
 and 1402 Nanking campaign 198–200
 family of, pardoned 280
chia 嘉 (admirably) 440 n1
 Chia Canal 江河 552–3
chia-ch'eng 家乘 (family or clan genealogies), *see* genealogies
 Chia-ching 嘉靖 reign, *see* Chu Hou-ts'ung
Chia-ching i lai nei ko shou fu chuan 嘉靖以來內閣首輔傳 763
 Chia-ch'ing 嘉慶 reign 813
chia-fa 家法 (the laws of the house or laws of the imperial family) 175
 Chia-ho 夾河 199
 Chia-hsing 嘉興 123, 281, 496, 498; 497 map23
 Chia-ling River 嘉陵江 101; 126 map6
 Chia Lu 賈魯 39, 46, 60, 357
chia-p'u 家譜 (family or clan genealogies), *see* genealogies
 Chia-ting 嘉定 county 154, 807
 Chia-yü Pass 嘉峪關 394, n21, 395
 Chiang 蔣 empress dowager (d. 1538), *see* Chu Yu-yüan, consort of
 Chiang-Che 江浙 52, 56
 Chiang Ch'ing 姜清 791
 Chiang-hsi 江西 109
 Chiang Hsiang 姜瓊 690–1
 Chiang Hsing-yü 蔣星煜 795
 Chiang-huai 江淮 56
 Chiang Huan 蔣噲 172
 Chiang Kuei 蔣貴 316
 Chiang-ling 江陵 89
 Chiang Mountain 蔣山 128
 Chiang-ning 江寧, *see* Nanking
 Chiang-pei 江北 310, 336
 Chiang Pin 江彬 414–15, 418, 422, 424, 427–8, 432, 433, 434–8, 442

- Chiang-shih mi shih* 姜氏秘史 791
Chiang Tso-wen 江左文 800
Chiang-tung 江東 109
Chiang-tung Bridge 江東橋 76; 75
 map3
Chiang-yin 江陰 32, 71, 74
Chiang Yüan 江淵 339
Chiang Yüeh-kuang 姜曰廣 644,
 648
Chiao-chih 交趾, *see* Annam
Chiao-chou 膠州 Bay 618
Chiao Fang 焦芳 406, 750, 751, 752
 as *Chiao Mi-yang* 751
Chiao Hung 焦竑 732, 735, 761,
 765, 766
Chiao Mi-yang 焦泌陽, *see* *Chiao Fang*
Chiao min pang wen 教民榜文, *see*
Placard of instructions
to the people
Chiao-shih pi sheng 焦氏筆乘 766
chiao-ssu 郊祀 (suburban sacrifices)
 137
Chiao-yüan 椒園 744
Ch'iao Yün-sheng 喬允升 619
Chief Military Commission (*Ta tu-tu fu*) 124, 139, 140–1, 245–7,
 248, 376, 608; 243 map13
 of the Center 246; 243 map13
 of the Front 243 map13
 of the Left 243 map13
 of the Rear 246; 243 map13
 of the Right (*Yu-chün tu-tu fu*)
 177; 110 map4, 243 map13
 chief of staff (*taiyisi*), to Mongol
 leader 399, 400
Chief Surveillance Office (*Tu-ch'a yüan*), *see* *Censorate*
chieh 摺 (document type) 767
Chieh-ch'i t'ing chi 鮎奇亭集 812
Chieh-chou 隋州 101
chien 簡 (type of report) 767
Chien-chai so chui lu 寶齋瑣綴錄
 731 nr13
 as *So chui lu* 731
Chien-ch'ang 建昌 79, 170
Chien-ch'ang 建昌 marquis of, earl
 of, *see* *Chang Yen-ling*
Chien-chou 建州 267, 389; 224
 map9
Chien-chou 建州 Jurchen tribe
 266–7, 574–5, 577
chien-chün 監軍 (military
 supervisor) 374, 379
chien-hsiu (inspector of 監修
 compilation) 742
Chien I 建義 211, 278, 286, 290
Chien-k'ang 建康, *see* Nanking
chien-kuo 監國 (Protector of the
 State, de facto regent) 326–7,
 427, 642
Chien-ning 建寧 673–4; 659 map28
chien-sheng 監生 (National
 University students) 154
Chien sheng yeh wen 翦勝野聞 731,
 766
chien-t'ao 檢討 (compiler and
 examiner, correctors) 152, 736,
 742
chien t'i-tu chün-wu 兼提督軍務
 (concurrent superintendent of
 military affairs) 293
Chien-t'iao-so 健跳所 697–8
Chien-wen 建文 reign, *see* Chu
 Yün-wen
Chien-wen ch'ao yeh hui pien
 建文朝野彙編 791
Chien-wen hsün kuo chi
 建文遜國記 (Account of the
 abdication of the Chien-wen
 emperor) 204
Chien-wen shu fa ni 建文書法儕
 791
Chien-wen ti 建文帝, *see* Chu
 Yün-wen
Chien-yang 建陽 313
Chien yüan 諫院 (Bureau of
 Remonstrance) 141–2, 148

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

875

- Ch'ien 錢, empress, empress dowager, *see Chu Ch'i-chen*, consorts of
- Ch'ien Ch'ien-i 錢謙益 30, 614, 619–21, 628, 634, 748, 784, 787
- Ch'ien-ch'ing Palace 乾清宮 594, 598
- Ch'ien-ch'ing t'ang shu mu* 千頃堂書目 735, 753, 753 n92, 756, 757, 764, 765, 779, 781
- ch'ien-chuang* 錢莊 (proto-banks) 588
- Ch'ien Hsiang-k'un 錢象坤 619
- ch'ien-hu so* 千戶所 (battalions of 1000 men) 91
- Ch'ien-kuo, duke of 黵國公, *see Mu T'ien-po*
- Ch'ien-lung 乾隆 reign 202, 437 n7, 753, 811–13
- Ch'ien Lung-hsi 錢龍錫 618–9
- Ch'ien Ning 錢寧 414, 417, 418, 424, 426, 427–8, 432, 435–6
- Ch'ien River 黔江 377; 378 map17
- Ch'ien-shan 鉛山 313
- Ch'ien Shih-sheng 錢士升 620
- Ch'ien Ta-hsin 錢大昕 784, 786
- Ch'ien-t'ang River 錢塘江 660, 665, 665 n25, 666, 668, 669, 670, 674, 675, 698; 659 map28
- chib* 旨 (commands) 738
- chib* 志 (monographs [section in standard histories]) 727, 760, 772
- chib* 志 (treatises) 728
- Chih-cheng 至正 reign 28
- Chih-chiang 江江 144
- Chih-ch'ih fang* 制勅房 739 n46, 742
- Chih-ku 直沽 251
- chib-kuan* 職官 (organization of officials) 728
- Chih-kuang 智光 262
- Chih-p'ing 治平 reign 40
- Chih-shan yeh chi* 枝山野記 731
- Chih Wei-ch'eng 支偉成 785
- chib-yüan* 知院 322
- Chih-yüan 至元 reign 26
- chib-yün* 支運 (relay transport) 254
- ch'ib* 勅 (commands, draft of imperial order) 767
- ch'ib* 尺 (length unit) xxi
- Ch'ih-ch'eng 赤城 299 n202
- Ch'ih-chin 赤斤 315, 317
- Ch'ih-chin wei 赤斤衛 394, 397
- Ch'ih-chou 池州 66, 71, 74
- children, sale of 615
- chiliarch (commander of 1000 soldiers) 368
- chin* 斤 (catty, weight unit) xxi, 318
- Chin 金, lady (mother-in-law of Chu Yu-t'ang) 353–4
- Chin, Prince of 晉王 (sixteenth century) 422
- Chin, Prince of 晉王, *see Chu Kang*
- Chin-ch'ih 金齒 315
- Chin-chou 錦州 617, 636
- Chin-ch'u'an Gate 金川門 of Nanking 210; 75 map3
- Chin Chung 金忠 211
- Chin 金 dynasty 13, 59
- compared with Ming military colonies 104
- historical sources for 769
- Chin-hua 金華 17, 55, 71, 80, 111, 116, 310
- Chin i chib* 錦衣志 769
- Chin-i wei 錦衣衛, *see Imperial Bodyguard*
- Chin Lien 金濂 328, 332
- Chin-ling so shih* 金陵瑣事 766
- Chin-men 金門 (Quemoy) 504, 694, 696, 718, 721, 722, 724; 664 map29, 731 map31
- Chin Pao 金堡 687–9, 691
- Chin-sha River 金沙江 (River of Golden Sand) 755; 145 map7
- Chin-shan 金山 157

- Chin Sheng-huan 金聲桓 684–6
chin-shih 進士 (highest degree, metropolitan degree holder) 20, 401, 537
chin-shih hsüeh 金石學 (epigraphy) 735
 Chin Wen-cheng 金文徵 151
 Chin Ying 金英 306, 326, 333
 Chin Yu-tzu 金幼孜 209, 210, 279, 286, 791
 Ch'in, Prince of 秦王, *see* Chu Shuang
 Ch'in, Prince of 秦王, *see* Sun K'o-wang
ch'in-chün 親軍 (imperial guards) 244, 245–7
 Ch'in 秦 dynasty 599
Ch'in-hsien hsiao-ssu tien 欽先孝思殿 (Temple of Imperial Filial Piety) 124
 Ch'in-huai River 秦淮河 76; 75 map3
 Ch'in K'uei 秦達 163
ch'in-ming 欽命 (imperial order) 741
 Ch'in 秦 party (Shensi party) 542
 Ch'in Shih-huang 秦始皇 733
Ch'in ting hsü wen hsien t'ung k'ao 欽定續文獻通考 769
 Chindwin River 親敦江 314
ching 靖 (tranquilly) 440 n1
 Ching, Prince of 景王, *see* Chu Tsai-tsun
ching-ch'a 京察 (capital evaluation) 605
Ching-ch'ang 經廠 (Classics storehouse) 729
ching-ch'ang pen 經廠本 (classics storehouse volumes) 729
ching-chi 經濟 734
ching-chi wen 經濟文 (writings on state affairs) 733–4, 766
 Ching-chiang, Prince of 靖江王, *see* Chu Heng-chia
 Ching-chiang k'ou 淮江口 85, 87
 Ching-chou 靖州, Hunan 380; 378 map17
 Ching-chou 楚州, Hupeh 171 rebellions in 384–9 121 maps, 385 map18
 Ching-Hsiang 荊襄 rebellion 384–9; 399; 385 map18
ching-i 經義 (the meaning of the classics) 122
ching-nan 靖難 (to clear away disorders) 195, 195 n23, 214
 Ching-ning chou 靖寧州 117
Ching pao 京報, *see* Peking gazette
ching-shih 經世 734
ching-shih chi-min 經世濟民 (to administer society and relieve the people) 766
Ching shih pa pien lei tsuan 經世八編類纂 769
Ching shih ta tien 經世大典 (Great canon for governing the world) 221, 729
ching-shih wen 經世文 (writings on state affairs) 733–4, 766
 Ching-t'ai 景泰 reign, *see* Chu Ch'i-yü
 Ching-ti 景帝 (Han emperor) 192
 Ching-ti 景帝, *see* Chu Ch'u-yü
ching-wei 京衛 (Capital Guards) 244–7
ching-yen 經筵 (classics mat lectures) 352
ching-ying 京營 (capital training camps) 247–8
ch'ing 噸 (area unit) xxi
 Ch'ing, Prince of 慶王, *see* Chu Chan
Ch'ing chiao lu 清敎錄 (Purification of the [Buddha's] teachings) 142
 Ch'ing-chou 慶州, Mongolia 157
 Ch'ing-chou 青州, Shantung 161, 171; 121 maps

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

877

- Ch'ing ch'u nung min ch'i i tzu liao
chi lu* 淸初農民起義資料輯錄 815
- ch'ing-chün* 清軍 (troop purification) 294
- Ch'ing 清 dynasty 1 administration of 293 armies of 651 borders of 392 and border defense 103 and conquest of China 389, 628–9, 640, 809 examination quotas in 280 founder of 575 Hung-kuang embassy to 651–2 and official appointment 152 officials in 806 printing in 729 scholarship in 449–50, 750, 759, 784 and sources on the Southern Ming 808
- Ch'ing-yang (hsien) 廣陽 (縣) 116, 117, 409
- Ch'ing-yüan 慶元, Chekiang 36; 19 map2
- Ch'ing-yüan 淸遠, Kwangtung 680; 696 map30
- Chinggis (Khaghan) 成吉思 (可汗) 13, 222, 258, 261, 331, 391, 395, 398, 466
- Chiu-chiang 九江 61, 429 as Ch'en Yu-liang's base 65, 66, 77 and Ch'ing armies 658 Chu Yüan-chang conquers 78–9 and Tso Liang-yü 657, 684 viceroy at 645, 649 429 map21, 659 map28
- Chiu Ling-yeong (Chao Ling-yang) 趙令揚. 795
- chiu-pien* 九邊, *see* Nine Defense Areas
- Chiu pien k'ao* 九邊考 772
- Chiu pien t'u lun* 九邊圖論 772
- Chiu-shan 九江 494; 497 map23
- Chiu shih chiu ch'ou* 九十九籌 (Ninety-nine schemes [for military resistance against Manchus]) 772
- Ch'iu Chün 丘淳 379, 745, 798
- Ch'iu Fu 丘幅 206, 226
- Ch'iu Luan 仇鸞 391, 476–7
- Chiu Shu-sen 邱樹森 785
- Cho chung chih* 酋中志 752, 765
- Ch'o keng lu* 輟耕錄 26
- Chosön, *see* Korea 朝鮮
- Chosön wangjo sillok* 朝鮮王朝實錄, *see* *Yijo sillok*
- chou* 州 (subprefecture) 778
- Chou, duke of 周公 217, 440 n1 Wang Chen compared with 308
- Chou 周 lady, dowager empress, *see* Chu Ch'i-chen, consorts of
- Chou, Prince of 周王 (1361–1425), *see* Chu Su
- Chou, Prince of 周王 (fl. 1576) 521 n3
- Chou Ch'en 周忱 293, 296–7
- Chou Chia-mo 周嘉謨 599
- Chou-chih hsien 周至縣 623
- Chou Ching-hsin 周敬心 163
- Chou 周 dynasty 31, 32, 137, 217, 440 n1, 509 sources for 732 19 map2
- Chou Hui 周暉 766
- Chou Hung-mo 周洪謨 383–4, 388
- Chou Kan 周幹 281, 295
- Chou li* 周禮 (Institutions of Chou) 143, 187, 188
- Chou Liang-hsiao 周良宵 795
- Chou Piao 周饒 648
- Chou-shan Islands 舟山群島, 60, 502, 503 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 714, 718, 719 and Huang Pin-ch'ing 693

- Chou-shan Islands (*cont.*)
 and the regent Lu 675, 695, 698,
 700
 497 map23, 664 map29, 696 map30,
 713 map31
- Chou Shun-ch'ang 周順昌 608
- Chou Te-hsing 周德興 163
- Chou Tzu-wang 周子旺 39
- Chou Yen-ju 周延儒 614, 619, 621,
 634, 637
- Chou Yüan-chen 周元真 120, 127
- Ch'ou hai t'u pien* 筵海圖編 774
- “Christian daimyo,” *see* Konishi Yukinaga
- Christianity
 in China 561–3, 692, 802
 in Japan 699
 on Taiwan 723
see also Catholicism; Jesuits;
 missionaries
- chronicles of noble families (*shih-chia*) 757, 758, 798
- chronological records (*chi*) [section of histories] 757, 758
- chronological tables (*nien-piao*) 753
- Chu 朱 26 (Ch'en Chu?); *see also* Ch'en Chu
- Chu Chan 朱橚 (sixteenth son of Chu Yüan-chang) 171, 171t,
 173
 as Ch'ing, Prince of 171, 171t;
 121 map5
- Chu Chan-chi 朱瞻基 (eldest son of Chu Kao-chih; mother, empress Chang)
 birthright 283, 285
 as Chang Huang-ti 303
 character of 284
 and Chu Ch'i-chen 308
 and Chu Ti 285
 compilations by 303
 compilations ordered by 791
 consorts of: Hu, empress (d.
 1443) 303; others from Korea
- 301; Sun, Madame, consort,
 empress dowager (d. 1462;
 empress from 1428, mother of
 heir apparent Chu Ch'i-chen)
 303, 325, 326, 329, 346, 374;
 Wu, consort (mother of Chu
 Ch'i-yü) **
- as heir apparent 282, 283, 285
 historical sources for 752, 766,
 768, 793, 795–6
 and the Hsüan-te reign 182, 203,
 242, 247, 249, 254, 256, 281,
 284–304, 305–6, 428
- as Hsüan-tsung 303, 367, 371, 752
 mother of 305
 policies established:
 administration 286–8, 291–4,
 358; fiscal policy 294–8;
 foreign relations 289–91, 298–
 303; location of the capital
 285–6; relief measures 309
 response to opposition and
 criticism 292
- Chu Chan-shan 朱瞻墡 (brother of Chu Chan-chi) 306
 as Hsiang, Prince of 306
- Chu Ch'ang-fang 朱常芳 (son of Chu I-liu)
 as Luh, Prince of 642, 642 n2,
 649, 653, 660, 660 n20
 as regent in Hangchow (June
 1645) 660, 660 n19, 812
- Chu Ch'ang-hsun 朱常洵 (1586–
 1641, third son of Chu I-chün;
 mother, Lady Cheng) 516–17,
 593, 649
- consorts of: (mother of his son
 Chu Yu-sung) 658
 as Fu, Prince of 517, 548–50, 555
- Chu Ch'ang-lo 朱常洛 (eldest son
 of Chu I-chün; mother,
 consort Wang, d. 1611) 517
- consorts of 593; empress 594; Li,
 consort 594–5, 597, 598; Liu,

GLOSSARY—INDEX

879

- palace lady (d. 1614, mother of Chu Yu-chien) **; Wang, consort (d. 1619, mother of Chu Yu-chiao) 596
 death of 593–4
 as heir apparent 517, 548–50, 554–6, 591, 593, 642
 historical sources for 740, 749–50, 758, 759, 765, 772, 805–7
 as Kuang-tsung 749, 750
 policies established 591–5;
 defense 611; military spending 591; official appointments 592;
 taxation 591
 and the Red Pill Case 593, 597, 598
 and the T'ai-ch'ang reign 550, 585, 590–5, 596, 597, 609, 613
 tomb of 597, 607, 608
- Chu Ch'ang-ying 朱常瀛 (seventh son of Chu I-chün; father of Chu Yu-lang and Chu Yu-ai) 676, 693
 consorts of: Ma, consort, Christian name – Maria (mother of and junior empress dowager to Chu Yu-lang) 692; Wang, empress dowager, Christian name – Helena (honorary mother of Chu Yu-lang) 692
 as Kuei, Prince of 676
- Chu Chen 朱樞 (sixth son of Chu Yüan-chang) 161, 171t, 547
 as Ch'u, Prince of 161, 171t; 121 maps
- Chu Ch'en-hao 朱宸濠 445
 as Ning, Prince of 445
 rebellion of 416, 423–30, 445, 605; 429 map21
 sources on 799
- Chu Ch'i-chen 朱祁鎮 (elder son of Chu Chan-chi; mother, consort Sun)
- accession of 305–7ff, 358–9
 and the Cheng-t'ung region 204, 283, 293, 297, 303, 305–25, 383; historical sources for 746, 749, 752, 766, 768, 796–7
 consorts of: Ch'ien, empress, empress dowager 307, 325, 329, 345, 346; Chou, lady, empress dowager (mother of heir apparent Chu Chien-shen) 346, 348, 352; others 345
 death of 361, 367
 and empress dowager Sun 325, 326, 329
 as heir apparent 303
 issues at court: defense 327–8;
 emperor's military activities 323–5, 332; ransom of the emperor 329–30, 332; retreat from Peking 325–6, 332;
 succession 326–7, 337–9
 response to opposition and criticism 339–42
 as *t'ai-shang huang-ti* (retired emperor) 327, 332, 333, 506
 and the T'ien-shun reign 319, 339–43, 345, 360, 374, 423; historical records for 752, 766, 796–7
 and the T'u-mu incident 322–31, 344, 345, 360, 389, 749, 796
 as Ying-tsung 5, 305, 337–9, 339–42, 343, 361, 367, 371, 374, 506, 746, 749, 752, 797
- Chu Ch'i-sheng 朱器盛 (father of Chu Yü-chien) 668
- Chu Ch'i-yü 朱祁鉉 (second son of Chu Chan-chi; mother, consort Wu)
 attitude toward criticism 327, 338
 as Ch'eng, Prince of 326–7, 339
 and the Ching-t'ai reign 327–39, 344–5, 360, 642; historical sources for 746, 749, 766,

- Chu Ch'i-yü (*cont.*)
 796–7
 as Ching-ti 329, 330, 331, 337–9;
 historical sources for 749
 consorts of: Hang, lady empress
 (r. 1452–, d. 1456, mother of
 heir apparent Chu Chien-Chi)
 338; Wang, empress (r. 1450–
 52, d. 1507) 338
 as Protector of the State 642
 as regent 322, 326–7
 as Tai-tsung **
- Chu Chien-chi 朱見濟 (son of Chu Ch'u-yü; mother, consort
 Hang)
 as heir apparent 338, 345
- Chu Chien-shen 朱見深 (eldest son
 of Chu Ch'i-chen; mother,
 Lady Chou) 326
 character of 345
 and the Ch'eng-hua reign:
 Chapter 6, 343, 344–51, 440,
 648; historical sources for 752,
 797–8
 consorts of: Chi, lady, empress
 dowager (mother of heir
 apparent Chu Yu-t'ang) 347–8,
 352; Shao, lady (mother of
 Chu Yu-yüan and grandmother
 of Chu Hou-ts'ung) 440, 442;
 Wan, lady 345–9, 351–2, 356,
 362, 366; Wang, empress (2) (r.
 1464–, d. 1518 grandmother
 of Chu Hou-chao) 404, 421;
 Wu, lady, empress (1) (r. 1464)
 346–7, 369
 death of 351
 as heir apparent 326, 337, 338,
 344–5
 as Hsien-tsung 337, 343, 349,
 358–64, 366, 371–6, 752
 as I, Prince of 338
 and Lady Chou (his mother) 346,
 348
- policies established 345–50, 351,
 357; establishment of imperial
 estates 345, 348; eunuch con-
 trol 345, 348–50; irregular
 appointment 345, 348, 648;
 judicial system 367–70; milit-
 ary affairs 370–402; reliance on
 court 361–4; suppression of
 bandits 386–9; taxation 350,
 388–9; treatment of minorities
 381–4
 response to opposition and
 criticism 345, 348, 360, 369–70
- Chu Chih 朱楨 (fifteenth son of
 Chu Yüan-chang) 170–1, 171t,
 171 n194, 173
 as Liao, Prince of 170, 171t, 178,
 181; 121 maps
- Chu Chih-fan 朱寅璠 409–12
 as An-hua, Prince of 409, 799
 sources for 799
- Chu Ch'un 朱椿 (eleventh son of
 Chu Yüan-chang) 161, 171t
 as Shu, Prince of 161, 171t; 121
 maps
- Chu-ch'üan 諸全 80, 84, 92
- Chu Ch'üan 朱權 (seventeenth son
 of Chu Yüan-chang) 171, 171t,
 173, 214
 as Ning, Prince of 171, 171t, 173,
 178, 181, 222, 423; 121 maps
- Chu Fu 朱博 (seventh son of Chu
 Yüan-chang) 161, 171t, 172
 as Ch'i, Prince of 161, 171t, 194;
 121 maps
- Chu Heng-chia 朱亨嘉 669
 as Ching-chiang, Prince of 669
- Chu Hou-chao 朱厚照 (elder son of
 Chu Yu-t'ang; mother,
 empress Chang, d. 1541)
 accession of 405
 as Chen-kuo, Duke of 43off
 and the Cheng-te reign 357, 371,
 441–2, 445, 460, 509, 511–12;

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

881

- historical sources for 752, 758, 799–803; major discussion of: Chapter 7
 as Chu Shou 421–2, 430ff
 consorts of: Hsia, empress (d. 1535) 404, 428, 463; Liu, her ladyship 422, 432, 433; others 411, 414, 420, 427, 433
 evaluation of 509, 511–12, 799
 final testament of 437–9, 437 n7, 441–3, 446, 800
 as heir apparent 353, 357, 403, 408, 428
 issues at court: eunuch power 405–9, 512, 800; garrisons 405; imperial truculence 404, 405, 417; protocol abandoned 417, 422, 432, 439; rebellions of Princes of An-hua and of Ning 409–12, 423–30; revenue 404–5; succession 436–9; tours of inspection 418–23, 430–6, 450
 511–12, 800; troop rotation 414–15
 and martial display 404, 414–16, 418–23, 430–6, 439
 response to opposition and criticism 406, 412, 417, 418–20, 423, 430, 450
 spirit tablet of 460–1
 as Wu-tsung 352, 403 n1, 799; historical sources for 742, 743
 Chu Hou-ts'ung 朱厚熜 (eldest son of Chu Yu-yüan; mother, consort Chiang)
 accession of 440, 446
 assassination attempts on 464–5, 800
 and the Chia-ching reign 273, 366, 512, 513, 518–19, 750; historical sources for 738, 744, 752, 753, 755, 759, 763, 766, 768, 799–803; major discussion of: Chapter 8
 consorts of: Chang, express (r. 1529–34, d. 1536) 458, 461; Ch'en, consort, empress (r. 1522–28, d. 1528) 458, 461; Fang, consort, empress (r. 1534–47) 461–2, 464; others 461–2, 464–5, 479–82
 death of 508, 518
 education of 440–1
 evaluation of 508, 800
 as Hsing, Prince Hsien of 441–2, 446
 as Hsing, Prince of 437
 issues at court: border defense 451–3, 468–79; educational reform 447; foreign trade 490–510; hereditary nobility 463, 489; reduction of eunuch power 447, 465–6; ritual 443–50, 457–61; succession 441–7, 456, 457–61, 471, 800; taxation 447; Turfan 456
 posthumous testament of 518
 publications of 458
 response to opposition and criticism 443, 445, 446, 447, 448–9, 450, 456, 457–61, 463, 464–5, 468, 469, 471, 476, 509–10, 512, 518
 as Shih-miao 752
 as Shih-tsung 440 n1, 752
 as Su-huang 759, 801
 and Taoism 479–83, 507–8, 512
 Chu Hsi 朱熹 16, 146, 218–20, 449–50
 biographical writings of 763
 commentaries on the classics 184, 729
 historical writings of 754
 and neo-Confucianism 732–3
 opposition to 730
 Chu Hsi-ts'u 朱希祖 814
 Chu Hua-k'uei 朱華菴 547–50
 as Ch'u, Prince of 547–50

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

882

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Chu Hui 朱橚 (nineteenth son of Chu Yüan-chang) 171t, 200–1
 as Ku, Prince of 171t, 181, 121
 maps
- Chu Hung-lam (Chu Hung-lin)
 朱鴻林 798
- Chu Hung-lin, *see* Chu Hung-lam
- Chu I-chün 朱翊鈞 (third son of Chu Tsai-hou; mother, consort Li)
 accession of 512 n1
 consorts of 593; Cheng, lady, Kuei-fei (d. 1630, mother of Chu Ch'ang-hsün, grandmother of Chu Yu-sung) 516, 555, 593, 649; others 516; Wang, consort (d. 1611, mother of heir apparent Chu Ch'ang-lo)**; Wang, empress (d. 1620) 516
 death of 583–4
 education of 514–15, 518, 519
 issues at court: Attack with the Club case 554–6; Chang Chü-cheng's policies 526–9;
 economic reform 522–32, 544–7, 551, 554; grand secretaries and the emperor 529–30;
 Korean campaigns 567–74;
 legitimacy of the Prince of Ch'u 547–50; Manchu question 575, 577; “mysterious pamphlet” 548–50; retirement for mourning 526–7, 532;
 succession 516–17, 529, 530, 532, 547, 554–6, 591, 642;
 vacancies at court 550–4
 mother of, consort Li 514–15, 522; as empress dowager Tz'u-sheng 523; and recognition of Chu Yün-wen's status 643
 posthumous institutions of 591
 response to criticism and opposition 514–16, 517, 528,
- 532–3, 537–8, 541, 542, 543, 548, 549–50, 552, 553–4, 567, 572, 577, 583
 as Shen-tsung 750, 751
 tomb of 597
 and the Wan-li reign 202, 510, 589–99, 609, 614, 620, 642, 643, 677; historical records for 740, 744, 750, 751, 752, 753, 763, 765, 766, 772, 776, 803–5; major discussion of: Chapter 9
- Chu I-hai 朱以海 (tenth-generation descendant of Chu Yüan-chang through the founder's tenth son Chu T'an)
 and bases of operation: Amoy (Hsia-men Islands) 695, 698–9; Ch'ang-yüan Islands 695; Chien-t'iao-so 697–8; Chin-men Island 698–9; Chou-shan Islands 675, 698; Shao-hsing 665–75, 695
 character of 668
 death of 724
 as Lu, Prince of 642 n2, 663, 665 n24, 668
 as Lu, regent 642 n2, 663, 665, 665 n24, 666–70, 675; 714, 719, 720, 724, 812; and his Southern Ming court 664
 map29; historical sources for 812; major discussion of 693–701
- Chu I-liu 朱翊鏗 (fourth son of Chu Tsai-hou and younger brother of Chu I-tsun), *see* Chu Ch'ang-fang
- Chu I-tsun 朱彝尊 750
- Chu Kang 朱橚 (third son of Chu Yüan-chang) 120, 138, 161–2, 171, 171t, 172, 178, 181, 216
 as Chin, Prince of 173, 177, 192; 121 maps
- Chu Kao-chih 朱高熾 (eldest son of

GLOSSARY—INDEX

883

- Chu Ti; mother, empress Hsü
 birthright 273–4, 277
 as Chao Huang-ti 283
 consorts of: Chang, empress,
 empress dowager, grand
 empress dowager (d. 1442,
 mother of heir apparent Chu
 Chan-chi) 283, 285, 303,
 305–11
 as heir apparent 209–10, 214,
 238–9, 245, 277–8, 285
 and the Hung-hsi reign 182, 203,
 244, 276–84, 285; historical
 sources for 752, 793, 795–6
 issues at court 276–84, 289;
 appointments 278–80, 358;
 fiscal reform 281–2; foreign
 relations 278, 281–2; judicial
 affairs 280–1; location of
 capital 782–3
 as Jen-tsung 283, 752
 tomb of 247, 283
 as Yen, Prince of 285
 Chu Kao-hsi 朱高熾 (fourth son of
 Chu Ti) 274
 Chu Kao-hsü 朱高煦 (second son
 of Chu Ti) 210, 245, 274, 277,
 278
 as Han, Prince of 274, 288
 rebellion of 284, 288–9, 285, 304,
 305, 307, 428, 445; historical
 sources for 795
 Chu Kao-sui 朱高燧 (third son of
 Chu Ti) 277, 285, 428
 as Chao, Prince of 274, 289
 Chu Keng 朱賡 529
 Chu Kuei 朱桂 (thirteenth son of
 Chu Yüan-chang) 171, 171t,
 171 n194, 173, 194
 as Tai, Prince of 171, 171t, 171
 n194, 173, 181; 121 maps
 Chu Kuo-chen 朱國禎 163, 757,
 765
 Chu Liang-tsu 朱亮祖 96, 97
 Chu Lin 朱璘 759
 Chu Lu 朱鷺 791
 Chu Mu-chieh 朱睦桺 763
 Chu Neng 朱能 206, 230
 as Ch'eng-kuo, duke of 230
 Chu Piao 朱標 (eldest son of Chu
 Yüan-chang; mother, empress
 Ma)
 consorts of: Lü, consort,
 dowager empress (mother of
 Chu Yün-wen) 185; others 185
 as heir apparent 55, 111, 122, 164,
 184–5, 216, 292
 Chu P'ien 朱楩 (eighteenth son of
 Chu Yüan-chang) 171t, 194
 as Min, Prince of 171t; 121 maps
 Chu Po 朱栢 (柏) (twelfth son of
 Chu Yüan-chang) 171t, 194
 as Hsiang, Prince of 171t; 121
 maps
 Chu Sheng 朱勝 56
 Chu Shih-huang 朱碩璜 (d. 1632,
 grandfather of Chu Yü-chien)
 668
 as T'ang, Prince of 688
 Chu Shou 朱壽, *see* Chu Hou-chao
 Chu Shou-ch'ien 朱守謙 132
 Chu Shuang 朱炎 (second son of
 Chu Yüan-chang) 120, 138,
 171t, 178, 181, 216
 wife of 128
 character of 164
 death of 172, 192
 as Ch'in, Prince of 177; 121 maps
chu-ssu chih-chang 諸司職掌
 (government statutes) 737
Chu ssu chih chang 諸司職掌 (Rules
 for administrators) 131, 754
 Chu Ssu-pen 朱思本 775
 Chu Su 朱肅 (fifth son of Chu
 Yüan-chang) 172, 194, 216
 as Chou, Prince of 158, 171t; 121
 maps
 Chu T'an 朱檀 (tenth son of Chu

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

884

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Chu T'an (*cont.*)
 Yüan-chang) 171t
 as Lu, Prince of 171t; 121 maps
- Chu Ti 朱棣 (fourth son of Chu)
 Yüan-chang; mother, a secondary consort) 120, 139, 142, 148, 161–2, 164, 165, 171t, 172, 177, 194, 202–3, 371
 accession of 201
 birthright 193, 195, 215–17
 campaign to Outer Mongolia 7, 103, 106, 205–12, 239, 245, 247, 256, 265, 267–8, 273–5, 285, 298–9, 307, 316, 318, 320 371–2; historical sources for 771, 790, 794; major discussion of 223–9; 225 map 10
 as Ch'eng-ts'u (subsequent temple name) 273–4, 460, 746
 compilations by 218, 791
 compilations sponsored by 184, 219–21, 728–9, 734, 748, 750, 789, 790, 791
 consorts of: Hsü, empress (mother of heir apparent Chu Kao-chih) 200, 273–4, 277; Kwöñ, consort 269, 273; Wang, lady (d. 1420) 273; others 274, 307
 historical sources for 794
 issues at court 280–4, 289; administration 5, 208–11, 358; eunuchs 5, 212, 364–5; foreign relations 221–36, 256–72; ideology 218–21, 274; Imperial Bodyguard 213–14; legitimacy 214–18; location of capital 237–44, 643; military affairs 5, 7, 244–9; nobility 245
 and maritime expeditions 232–6, 269–72
 response to opposition and criticism 240–1, 273–6, 278
 as T'ai-tsung (original temple name) 273, 371–2, 460, 746, 748, 790
 tomb of, Chang-ling 247, 273
 usurpation of 5, 7, 185–6, 189, 193–210, 214, 259, 277–8, 288, 289, 305, 445, 748; historical sources for 748, 751, 790–1, 793–4
 as Wen huang-ti 273
 as Yen, Prince of 136, 171t, 178, 189, 190, 191–3, 207, 245, 262, 277, 748, 794
 and the Yung-lo reign 5, 113, 118, 157, 182, 188, 189, 371–2, 374, 375, 415, 423, 574, 643, 708, 750, 787, 789; historical sources for 734, 743, 746, 752, 790, 791–2, 793, 794–5; major discussion of 205–76
 Chu Tsai-hou 朱載垕 (third son of Chu Hou-ts'ung) 462; accessions of 513
 consorts of: Ch'en, express (d. 1596, Chu I-chün's principal mother) 522; empress (d. 1558) **; Li, consort, empress dowager Tz'u-sheng (d. 1614, Chu I-chün's natural mother) 514–15, 522, 523
 education of 513, 518
 evaluation of 512–14
 as heir apparent 462, 513, 518, 519
 and the Lung-ch'ing reign 518–21, 756; historical sources for 738, 752, 759, 763, 766, 803–5; major discussion of 511–14
 as Yü, Prince of 462
 Chu Tsai-huo 朱載燉 (second son of Chu Hou-ts'ung) 462
 birth of 470
 as heir apparent 462
 Chu Tsai-ts'un 朱載崑 (fourth son of Chu Hou-ts'ung)
 as Ching, Prince of 462, 513
 Chu Tsung 祝宗 81
 Chu Tung-jun 朱東潤 804

GLOSSARY – INDEX

885

- Chu T'ung- lei 朱統灝 649
- Chu Tzu 朱梓 162, 171t
as T'an, Prince of 171t; 121 maps
- Chu-tzu tsui chib lu* 祝子罪知錄 73°
- Chu Tz'u hsüan 朱慈煥 (heir apparent to Chu Yu-lang) 692, 710, 710 n65
- Christian name – Constantine 692
- Chu Tz'u-huan 朱慈煥 (younger son of Chu Yu-chien) 641 n1
- as Yung, Prince of 641 n1
- Chu Tz'u-lang 朱慈烺 (eldest son of Chu Yu-chien) 641, 654
- as heir apparent 641, 654
- impersonator of 654
- Chu Tz'u-ts'an 朱慈燦 (younger son of Chu Yu-chien) 641 n1
- as Ting, Prince of 641 n1
- Chu Wan 朱紈 494–5, 802
- Chu Wen-cheng 朱文正 81, 90, 132
- Chu Wen-kuei 朱文圭 (姁) (second son of Chu Yün-wen) 201
- Chu Wen-k'uei 朱文奎 (eldest son of Chu Yün-wen) 201
- Chu Ying 朱模 (fourteenth son of Chu Yüan-chang) 170, 171 n194, 173
- as Su, Prince of 170, 171t; 121 maps
- Chu Yu-ai 朱由校 (son of Chu Ch'ang-ying and elder brother of Chu Yu-lang) 676–7
- as Kuei, Prince of 677
- Chu Yu-chiao 朱由校 (eldest son of Chu Ch'ang-lo; mother, concubine Wang, d. 1619)
- accession of 594–5, 611
- consorts of, empress 607
- death of 611, 750
- as heir apparent 594
- as Hsi-tsung 750, 751
- issues at court: construction of imperial tombs 597; eunuch power 597; Manchu control 598–602, 606; personnel evaluation 605–8; powers of consort Li 594–5; Red Pill and Change of Palace cases 598 and Madame K'o 596–9, 608, 612–13
- response to opposition and criticism 598, 607
- and the T'ien-ch'i reign 585, 612, 614, 647, 648, 666; historical sources for 740, 750–1, 755, 758, 759, 763, 765, 772, 805–7; major discussion of 595–611
- and Wei Chung-hsien 596–8, 751
- Chu Yu-chien 朱由檢 (fifth son of Chu Ch'ang-lo; mother, palace lady Liu, d. 1614)
- accession of 611
- burial of 651–2
- as Chuang-lieh ti 612
- and the Ch'ung-chen reign 585, 641, 648, 651, 652, 653, 654, 666, 669, 701, 810; historical sources for 746, 759, 763, 765, 805–7; major discussion of 611–37
- consorts of 652
- as Huai-tsung 612
- as I-tsung 612
- issues at court: defense against Manchus 616ff, 629–31; eunuch inspectors 619; flight south 638; foreign trade 614–15; pacification of versus subduing rebels 615–16; Wei Chung-hsien's purge 612–14
- response to opposition and criticism 612–13, 614, 616–17, 622, 627, 630, 634, 637, 638
- as Ssu-tsung 612
- suicide of 612, 737–8, 641
- Chu Yu-lang 朱由榔 (youngest son of Chu Ch'ang-ying; grandson of Chu I-chün)
- accession of 678

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

886

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Chu Yu-lang (*cont.*)
 and bases of operation: An-lung
 705; Burma 707–8; Chao-
 ch'ing 677–8, 679, 685, 686–
 90, 692; Ch'üan-chou 681–2;
 Hsiang-chou 683; Kuei-lin 679,
 683; Nan-ning 683, 705; T'eng-
 yüeh 707–8; Wu-chou 677–8,
 679, 690, 692; Wu-kang 682–3;
 Yunnan-fu 706
 consorts of: Wang, empress
 (Christian name – Anna) 692
 execution of 710, 710 n65, 724
 as Kuei, Prince of, falsely so
 identified 677 n34
 response to opposition and
 criticism 682, 688, 691
 and the Yung-li reign 694, 698,
 704, 712, 714, 717, 812; 696
 map 30; major discussion of
 676–92; 701–10
 as Yung-ming, Prince of 677–8
 as Yung-ming, regent 677–8
 Chu Yu-sung 朱由崧 (son of Chu
 Ch'ang-hsün) 202
 accession of 642–3
 as An-tsung xxiii
 character of 649–50
 consorts of, Madame T'ung, a
 false claimant 645–5, 657
 and flight from Nanking to Wu-
 hu 659–60
 as Fu, Prince of 202, 642, 644,
 648, 653, 655, 660 n20, 676
 and the Hung-kuang reign 202,
 663, 676, 681, 689, 812; major
 discussion of 641–60
 issues at court: civil versus
 military control 644, 646, 650;
 defection to Ch'ing cause 649;
 defection to rebel cause 648–9;
 heir to Ch'ung-chen emperor
 653–5; identification of enemy
 650–60; Ma Shih-ying's
 struggle for power 642–50;
 657–8; reorganization of the
 court 642–60
 as regent (*chien-kuo*) 642–3, 644
 response to opposition and
 criticism 654–5
 Chu Yu-t'ang 朱祐樞 (third son of
 Chu Chien-shen; mother,
 Lady Chi)
 accession of 405
 compared with his father, Chu
 Chien-shen 351–2
 consorts of: Chang, lady, empress
 (d. 1541, mother of heir
 apparent Chu Hou-chao) 352–
 6, 362, 403, 404, 441; empress
 dowager 437, 441, 442–3, 447,
 461–4
 as heir apparent 347–8
 as Hsiao-tsung 343, 351, 355,
 358–64, 366, 368, 370–6, 750
 and the Hung-chih reign 343,
 Chapter 6 *passim*, 403, 415,
 442, 450, 460, 511, 751;
 historical sources for 750, 751,
 752, 797–8; major discussion
 of 351–7
 issues at court 351–7;
 appointment policy 351;
 appointments of imperial in-
 laws 353–5; Confucian
 education 352, 355; defense
 415; eunuch power 352–3;
 excessive expenditures 353;
 imperial reliance on court 362–
 4, 450; justice system 352,
 367–70; military affairs 370–
 402; sex manuals 351; tax
 remissions and relief 355–6;
 treatment of minorities 381–4;
 tribute trade 394–7; water
 conservancy 356–7
 response to opposition and
 criticism 351, 354–5

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

887

- spirit tablet of 460
 as T'ai-ling 751
- Chu Yu-yüan** 朱祐杗 (fourth son of Chu Chien-shen; eldest son of Lady Shao) 273, 440, 441, 447
 ancestral tablet of 457–61, 755
 consort of: Chiang, empress dowager (1477–1538, mother of Chu Hou-ts'ung) 440, 445, 446–7, 448, 461, 462, 464
 as Hsing, Prince, of 437, 440
 as T'ai-tsung 460
- Chu Yung** 朱勇 324, 386–7
 as Fu-ning, earl of 386
- Chu Yü-chien** 朱聿鍵 (grandson of Chu Shih-huang, the prince of T'ang, and son of Chu Ch'i-sheng; ninth generation descendant of Chu Yüan-chang) 666–7
 accession of 666–7
 character and background of 668–9, 673–4
 consorts of: Tseng, empress 669, 676, 676 n33
 death of 676, 676 n33, 677, 677 n34
 issues at court: fiscal problems 670–2; military strategy 672–4
 and the Hung-wu reign 665–76, 678, 683 n39, 693–5, 712, 812
 as regent at Foochow 665
 response to opposition and criticism 669
 as T'ang, Prince of 663, 665, 667–9, 676; 664 map29
- Chu Yu-yüeh** 朱聿燶 (son of Chu Ch'i-sheng and younger brother of Chu Yü-chien) 679
 as regent in the Lung-wu reign 673
 and the Shao-wu reign 678–9, 812
- as T'ang, Prince of 673
 accession of 97–8, 108–11, 736
 adopted nephew of, *see* Li Wen-chung
 adopted sons of, *see* Ho Wen-hui; Mu Ying
 attitude toward literati 107, 115–16, 154–5
 background 11, 44–5, 49–50, 52–7
 characteristics as leader 35, 46–7, 49–50, 57, 84, 85, 87–8, 149ff, 158, 164, 179, 217, 368
 compilations by 131, 134–5, 142, 147, 151, 159, 163, 165, 172, 754, 789
 compilations ordered by 108, 116, 118, 132, 134, 173, 728
 consorts of: Ma, empress (d. 1382, mother of heir apparent Chu Piao) 46, 111, 122, 147–8, 164, 178, 193, 195, 216–18; lesser consort (mother of Chu Ti) 193; other lesser consorts 193
 early advisors of 46–56, 62, 71, 105, 107, 111–12, 116, 120
 and the Hung-wu calendar 98
 and the Hung-wu reign 96, 98, 107, 182–96, 200–3, 207–9, 214–18, 222–3, 229, 277, 527, 547, 708, 736; historical sources for 748, 752, 754, 759, 783–7, 788–9; major discussion of: Chapter 3; studies on 788–9
 as Kao huang-ti (Emperor Kao) 369, 786
 and Ming founding 2, 3, 11, 15, 29, 32, 44, 58, 62, 72–3, 87–8, 89–96; historical sources for 783–7; major discussion of 45–57, 96–106
 as Ming T'ai-tsu 702; 75 map3
 as monk 44–5, 115, 128

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

888

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Chu Yüan-chang (*cont.*)
 physical features of 44
 policies established 3, 6, 7,
 Chapter 3 *passim*, 182–96, 201,
 207–10, 222, 228, 229, 237–8,
 248–9, 250, 251, 254, 257, 258,
 305, 306, 321, 358–9, 362,
 364–5, 367, 369, 375, 408, 523,
 527, 533, 535, 544, 736, 737
 as rebel leader 44–7, 62, 66, 68–
 94, 108
 response to opposition and
 criticism 4–5, 24, 25, 50, 56,
 68–9, 81–2, 82–3, 89, 90, 93,
 97, 101, 102–3, 105, 112, 113,
 115, 123, 135–6, 139–43, 147,
 149–64, 169–81
 spirit tablet of 459
 as T'ai-tsu 52, 748, 750, 751, 786,
 788, 789
 tomb of 282, 350, 643; 75 map 3
 as Wen Huang 752
 as Wu, duke of 52
 as Wu, Prince of (*Wu wang*) 34,
 55, 88, 91, 108
Chu Yüan-chang chuan 朱元璋傳
 (Biography of Chu Yüan-
 chang) 784, 787
 as *Ts'ung seng po tao huang*
 ch'üan 788
Chu Yüan-chang hsi pien yao lu
 朱元璋系年要錄 786
Chu Yün-ming 祝允明 730
Chu Yün-wen 朱允炆 (eldest son of
 Chu Piao; mother, consort Lü)
 accession of 185
 advisors of (*see also* Ch'i T'ai;
 Fang Hsiao-ju; Huang Tzu-
 ch'eng), historical sources for
 794
 birthright of 184–5
 character of 186
 and the Chien-wen reign 5, 181,
 182, 208, 214–18, 284, 643,
 748, 751, 787; historical sources
 for 204, 746, 748–9, 751, 759,
 762–3, 790–1, 793–4; major
 discussion of 184–205
 as Chien-wen ti 202
 consorts of: Ma, empress
 (d. 1402) 201
 fate of 201–5; historical sources
 for 730, 794
 as heir apparent 164, 170, 178,
 194
 as Hui-ti 749
 as Hui-tsung 202
 as Jang Huang-ti 202
 as Kung-min Hui ti 202
 policies established 189–93, 208,
 245, 289; historical sources for
 794
 tomb of 643
Ch'u, Prince of 楚王 (1364–1424),
 see Chu Chen
Ch'u, Prince of 楚王 (early
 seventeenth century), *see* Chu
 Hua-k'uei
Ch'u-chou 滁州, Anhwei-Kiangsu
 border 46, 51
Ch'u-chou 處州, Chekiang 36, 68,
 71, 80, 81, 312, 313
Ch'u 楚 party 544, 687–8, 691–2
ch'u-sai 出塞 (going out beyond the
 frontiers) 395
Chua-wa kuo 爪哇國, *see* Java
chuan 傳 (biographies) 757
chuan-chi 傳記 (biographical
 collections) 728
ch'u-an-feng kuan 傳奉官 (directly
 appointed officials) 348
Chuang-lieh ti 莊烈帝, *see* Chu
 Yu-chien
Chuang 獄 (壯) people 377, 380
Chūgoku hōseiishi kōshō
 中國法制史考證 789
Ch'un-an 漳安 county 780
Ch'un-fang 春坊 (Directory of

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

889

- Instruction) 742
chung-chih 中旨 (direct edict) 648
Chung-hsiang 鍾祥 county 440
Chung Hsing 鍾惺 758
Chung kuan k'ao 中官考 800
Chung-kuo, duke of 息國公, *see* Shih Heng
Chung-kuo li shih hsüeh nien chien 中國歷史學年鑑 805
Chung-kuo shih-hsüeh hui 中國史學會 805
Chung-li 鍾離 village 44, 45
Chung Mountain 鍾山, *see* Tzu-chin shan
chung-shu she-jen 中書舍人, *see* drafters
Chung-tso-so 中左所 714; 713 map31
 as Ssu-Ming prefecture 714
ch'ung-chen 崇禎 (lofty and auspicious) 612
Ch'ung-chen 崇禎 reign, *see* Chu Yu-chien
Ch'ung-chen shih lu 崇禎實錄 746
Ch'ung-cheng ch'ang pien 崇禎長編 759
Ch'ung-ming Island 崇明島 496, 719, 721, 497 map23, 696 map30, 713 map31
Chungking 重慶 41, 101, 127, 382, 565, 702
 Lolo capture of 602
 19 map2, 696 map30
Chusan, *see* Chou-shan Islands
Chü-jung 句容 26
Chü-yen 屢延, *see* Etsina
Chü-yung Pass [Chü-yung-kuan] 屢庸關 100, 119, 323–4, 328, 419, 421, 476
 sources on 772
 323 map16, 419 map20, 633 map27
Ch'ü, Duke of 霽國公, *see* Fang Kuo-chen
Ch'ü-ching 曲靖 prefecture 144, 381; 145 map7
Ch'ü Chiu-ssu 翟九思 801
Ch'ü-chou 閩州 665; 659 map28
Ch'ü-fu 曲阜 197 map8
 Confucian temple in 146
Ch'ü Neng 翟能 161
Ch'ü Shih-ssu 翟式耜 676–7, 681–3, 685, 687, 692
Ch'ü Ta-chün 屌大均 766
Ch'ü-t'ang 翟唐 101, 125–6; 126 map6
chüan 卷 (division of a book) 221, 747, 748, 749, 753, 754, 759, 760, 784, 791
Ch'üan Ch'in 權謹 280
Ch'üan-chou 泉州, Fukien 169
 as Maritime Trade Intendency 269
 and Ch'ing armies 694, 721
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 695, 712, 714, 715
 historical sources for 780
Ch'üan-chou 全州, Hu-kuang 681, 782, 691, 692
Ch'üan-ning 全寧 390 map19
Ch'üan Tsu-wang 全祖望 812
chün-chi 軍籍 104–5
chün-t'un 軍屯, *see* military colonies
ch'ün hsiung 群雄 (group of competing leaders) 29, 48
 cities, growth of 586
 city walls
 and defense 7, 127, 238–9, 241, 472, 475, 477, 496, 497, 567, 646, 657, 680, 686
 historical studies on 789
 investiture of, in early Ming 115
 in late Yüan 61, 67, 73, 81, 83
 civil government vs. military government 15, 99, 104–6, 107, 186ff, 202–3, 205–6, 276–84
 civil war of 1399–1402: 182, 190,

- civil war of 1399–1402 (*cont.*)
 193–201
see also Chu Ti, usurpation of
 clan genealogies (*chia-ch'eng*), *see*
 genealogies
 clan law 444–5
 class struggle and modern
 historians' interpretation of the
 late Yüan 39, 49, 335–6
 classics mat lectures (*ching-yen*) 352
 Classics Storehouse (*Ching-ch'ang*)
 729
 classics storehouse volumes (*ching-*
ch'ang pen) 729
 classification, of Chinese books
 727–8, 753, 756, 757, 760–1,
 763–6, 769, 778, 779
 climate 586–7, 589–90, 615, 632
 historical sources on 776
see also drought; earthquakes;
 floods; natural disasters
 clique (*tang*) 532; *see also* Che
 party; Hsüan-K'un party;
 Tung-lin party; Ch'i party;
 Ch'u party; evaluations,
 personnel; factionalism;
 clique, pernicious 646
 clothing
 styles of 662, 684–5
 historical sources for 775
 club, the attack with, *see* Attack
 with the Club case
 coadjutors (*p'ai*) 459
 coastal defense 303; *see also* foreign
 trade; Maritime Trade
 Intendancies; navy; piracy
 pirates; shipbuilding; Southern
 Ming
 Cochin 柯枝 233, 235–6, 302; 234
 map 111
 Cohong 公行 560
 coins 650, 700
 see also copper coins
 collectanea (*ts'ung-shu*) 759, 813
 Collected ceremonies, *see* *Ta Ming*
chi li
 Collected ceremonies of the Ming
 dynasty, *see* *Ta Ming chi li*
 collected notes, *see* notebooks
 Collected statutes, *see* *Ta Ming hui*
tien
 Collected statutes of the Ming
 dynasty, *see* *Ta Ming hui tien*
 collected writings
 division of (*chi-pu*) 728, 761
 of an individual (*wen-chi*) 728,
 761, 768, 780, 789, 790, 791,
 793, 796, 798, 800, 813
 College of Translators (*Ssu-i kuan*)
 743
 comets 479
 commanderies, *see* garrisons
 commands (*chih*) [document type]
 738, 739
 commerce 425, 508, 509, 547 n11
see also foreign trade; trade;
 tributary relations
 common people
 relationship with nobility
 regulated 132–4, 175–6
see also peasants
 compilations, inspector of (*chien-*
hsiu) 742
 compilation, rules of (*fan-li*) 744,
 754
 compilation, supervisors of (*tsung-*
ts'ai) 741, 742, 744, 746, 747,
 762
 compilation, vice-supervisors of (*fu*
tsung-ts'ai) 741, 742, 744, 746
 compilers, first-class (*hsiu-chuan*)
 [of the Bureau of
 Historiography] 732, 736–7,
 742, 742 n54, 746
 compilers, second-class (*pien-hsiu*)
 [of the Bureau of
 Historiography] 736–7, 742,
 742 n54, 746

GLOSSARY – INDEX

891

- compiling officers (*tsuan-hsiu*
 [kuan]) 742, 742 n54, 744, 746
- Complete corpus in four treasuries*
 (*Ssu k'u ch'üan shu*) 812
- composite style of historical writing
 727, 756–60, 765
- Comprehensive record of the*
ministers of the ages (Shih ch'en
tsung lu) 173
- concubines 22, 259, 283, 612
see also individuals names of
emperors, consorts of
- concurrent associate in military
 affairs (*ts'an-li chün-wu*) 293
- concurrent superintendent of
 military affairs (*chien t'i-tu*
chün-wu) 293
- Confucian classics
 and administration 736, 738
 biographies of scholars of 762
 editions of 728–9, 791
 as gift to foreign states 301
 interpretation of, for the emperor
 738, 764
see also Chu Ti, compilations
sponsored by
- Confucian schools 778
- Confucian temple 458–9
- Confucian values 12, 16, 17, 18, 24,
 33–4, 35, 53–7, 64, 67, 98, 748,
 758
 and historiography 787
 and statecraft 6, 12, 16, 55, 58,
 143, 363, 509, 788, 792, 794,
 807
- Confucian values
 in the Hung-wu reign 111, 122,
 124, 132, 137, 142–3, 146–7,
 154, 167
 in the Chien-wen reign 185–8,
 195, 203
 in the Yung-lo reign 218–21, 274
 in the Hung-hsi reign 276–84
 in the Hsüan-te reign 303–4
- in the Hung-chih reign 352, 353,
 355–6, 371–2, 375–6
- in the Chia-ching reign 449–50,
 509, 512
- in the Wan-li reign 532–6, 536–
 40, 542, 545, 547 n11, 551–2
- in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 592–3
- in the Shun iterregnum 638
- Confucius 孔子 122, 534, 610, 732;
 rites to 122, 146–7, 458–9
- consorts 173, 343, 353–4, 363, 594
 ennobled (*kuei-fei*) 273
 lesser (*kung-fei*) 193
 primary 177–8, 184–5, 192, 273
 secondary 164, 177–8, 185, 269,
 273, 307
see also individual names of
emperors, consorts of
- construction
 of Ancestral Temple 407, 457–61
 for defense 477–8
 fiscal burden of 479
 of Grand Canal 589
 of Great Wall 249 n110, 589
 of imperial tombs 407, 597
 labor for 240–1, 475, 485
 of Nanking capital and palace
 buildings 309, 643, 645
 of Peking capital and palace
 buildings 237–44, 309, 345,
 366, 407, 416, 438, 462, 487–8,
 502, 506, 565, 589
 procurement for 565
see also soldiers as laborers
- Construction Bureau 241
- cooks in tribute trade 301
- Copenhagen 585
- copper, mining of 133
- copper coins 524, 589, 637
 as gifts to foreign states 271
- copyists (*t'eng-lu*) 740, 742
- corn 723
- correctors (*chien-t'ao*) 736–7, 742,
 746

892

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- corvée 133, 153, 154, 183, 190, 252, 275, 281, 309–10, 312, 320, 336, 486–9, 524, 525, 588
 historical sources for 779
- cosmic order 356
- cosmology, historical sources for 775, 778
- costume, Manchu 662
- cotton, historical sources for 776
- cotton cloth
 as export item 587
 as tax payment 255, 297
- “council of regents” 367 n10
- counties (*hsien*) 778
- coup d'état 300
 in late Yüan 12, 16, 58, 69, 81
 in the Hung-wu reign 139–43, 163–4
 in the Chien-wen reign 193–201, 215
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 338–9, 345, 749
 in the Cheng-te reign 442
- Court of Imperial Entertainments (*Kuang-lu ssu*) 743
 director in (*shu-ch'eng*) 743
- Court of Imperial Sacrifices (*T'ai-ch'ang ssu*) 356, 742; 243
 map13
 minister of (*ch'ing*) 742
- Court of the Imperial Stud 522, 652
- court records, destruction of 185
- court review (*ch'ao-shen*) 367–8
- Court of State Ceremonial (*Hung-lu ssu*) 743; 243 map13
 in the Ch'ing dynasty 652
 registrars in (*chu-pu*) 743
 ushers in (*hsü-pan*) 743
- Coyett, Frederic 723
- Crafts Institute (*Wen-ssu yüan*) 348
- craftsmen 8
- cranes 263, 507
- crimes 132
- criminals as laborers 240–1
- crossbows 160
- Cruz, Gaspar da 803
- Cultural Revolution, and
 scholarship 758, 788, 805, 815
- currency as salary payment 250, 631
see also copper coins; gold; paper
 money in tribute trade; silver
- curricula vitae (*hsing-chuang*) 730, 732, 761
- Cürüké 撈力克 (徹哩克) 557–8
- da Cruz, Gaspar, *see* Cruz, Gaspar da
- “Dai Min ryō kaisetsu 大明令解説” 789
- Dai Việt (Great Vietnam), *see* Vietnam
- daily records (*jih-li*) 741, 741 n52
- Daily records of the Great Ming (Ta Ming jih li)* 741
- Dalai Nur 99
- dancing 405, 775
- Danjō Hiroshi 檀上寛 789
- Darayism 472, 474
- Dash Badalugh 答失八都魯 94, 95
- Dash Temür 達識帖睦邇 33
- Dasu 達素 721
- Dayan-khan (Dayan-qan) 大元叶汗,
see Batü Möngke
- de Acuña, Don Pedro Bravo *see* Acuña, Don Pedro Bravo de
- De-bzin-gségs-pa 262–3
as Halima 262
- de Mailla, J. A. M. de Moyriac, *see* Mailla, J. A. M. de Moyriac de
- de Mendoza, Juan González, *see* Mendoza, Juan González de
- de Rada, Martín, *see* Rada, Martín de
- deer 479, 503
- democracy 544–5
- dGe-lugs-pa (Yellow Hat sect of Lamaistic Buddhism) 263
- Dhufar 祖法兒 236; 234 map11
- diaries of activity and repose (*ch'i-*

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

893

- chü chu*) 731, 736, 737, 738–40
- Dim Mhon, *see* Lin Feng
- direct edicts (*chung-chih*) 648
- directly-appointed officials (*ch'uan-feng kuan*) 348
- Directorate of Astronomy 243 map13
- Directorate of Ceremonial (*Ssu-li chien*) 287, 306, 333, 340, 349, 362, 366–8, 376, 406, 408, 412, 418, 422, 436–8, 441, 443, 450, 465–6, 520, 522, 554, 596–7, 729; 243 map13
- directors of bureaus (*lang-chung*) 737
- Directory of Instruction (*Ch'un-fang*) 742
- “Discussion on refugees” (*Liu min shuo*) 388
- discussions (*lun*) [type of writing] 728
- divination 480–1, 506
- Do-en [To-yen wei] 豆顏 [衆額衛] 265, 397; 225 map10
- Doctrine of the mean* 122
- documents (variously *chi*, *chieh*) [document type] 767
- Dodo 多鐸 656–62
- Dolon 多倫 113, 227, 228, 321 as To-lun 227
- Doni 多尼 707
- Dorgan 多爾袞 639, 639 n166, 640, 652–3, 653 n14, 656, 715
- drafters (*chung-shu she-jen*) 739, 739 n46, 740 n48, 742, 743
- drama 9, 221, 546, 658, 728
- drought 44, 58, 60, 122, 255, 298, 310, 336–7, 472–6, 479, 487, 488–9, 496, 503–4, 586, 615, 621, 621 n118, 622–3, 632, 645, 660, 675; 311 map15
- drugs and Chu Hou-ts'ung 479–82, 507–8
- and longevity 343, 465
- role in Chu Ti's death 174, 272–3
- drums, bronze 735
- drunkenness 404, 411, 414, 432, 435, 439, 488, 505, 800
- duke (*kung*) 742
- offices filled by 742 titles awarded 105, 107, 689, 715
- dust storms in North China 473
- Dutch East India Company 602–3, 722–3
- dyeing and weaving 485
- dynastic change
- Yüan to Ming: Chapters 1 and 2 *passim*
- Ming to Ch'ing 514, 517, 534, 543–54, 556–7, 558, 563–4, 574–90, 592, 611–12, 637, Chapter 11 *passim*
- dynastic histories, *see* histories, national
- Dzungaria 223, 257, 258, 393, 472; 224 map9
- E, Prince of 鄂爾東 121 maps
- earthquakes 282, 478, 479, 604
- Eastern Depot (*Tung-ch'ang*) 213, 349–50, 352, 466, 606
- Eastern Hall (*Tung-ko*) 740, 740 n48
- Eastern Palace (*Tung-kung*) 111
- economic prosperity 344, 508–10, 545–6, 587–90, 726
- economy
- fiscal burden: in the Yung-lo reign 183, 228, 232–6, 237–44, 254, 274–6; in the Hung-hsi reign 281–2, 284–5, 302–3; in the Cheng-t'ung reign 337, 345; in the Ch'eng-hua reign 348–50, 402; in the Hung-chih reign 365; in the Cheng-te reign 403–9, 410, 412, 416, 418, 420; in the Chia-ching

- economy (*cont.*)
 reign 485–9, 547 n11; in the Wan-li reign 551–2, 569–74, 577–9, 588–90; in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 603–5, 610; in the Ch'ung-chen reign 614–16, 626–7, 632; in the Southern Ming 645–6, 650, 657; in the early Ch'ing 709, 711
- fiscal policy 9; in the Hung-wu reign 123–4; in the Chien-wen reign 189–91; in the Yung-lo reign 211, 275–6, 794; in the Hung-hsi reign 281–2; in the Hsüan-te reign 284–5, 294–8; in the Chia-ching reign 485–510; in the Wan-li reign 522–32, 535, 544–7, 551, 554, 570–1, 587–90; in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 603–5, 610; in the Ch'ung-chen reign 614–16, 621–7, 631–2; in the Southern Ming; in the Hung-kuang reign 644, 645, 650–1; in the Lung-wu reign 667, 670–2; Lu regency 669–70; in the Yung-li reign 690, 708–10
- historical sources on 756, 776–7, 792, 793, 794, 795, 797, 798, 802, 804–5, 806
- revenue sources 403, 404–18, 485–9
- see also* monopolies, taxation
- edicts (*chao-ling, sheng-yü*) 181, 308, 359, 374, 375, 407, 408–9, 411, 420, 421–2, 424, 425, 432–3, 437, 441–3, 464, 469, 471, 482, 490, 493, 648, 673, 709, 737, 738, 808
- collections of 727, 745, 755, 790
- compiler of (*tai-chao*) 743
- recording of 739
- Edo 江戸 589, 699–700
- education 726
 classical learning 16, 17, 218–21, 285, 534–5
 and corruption 153
 and curriculum 152, 184, 219–20, 534–5
 in the early Ch'ing 661
 of eunuchs 287–8, 306, 364–5
 of heir apparent, *see* heir apparent, education of
 historical sources on 755, 779
- of palace ladies 306
- of princes 124, 186–8, 191, 193, 513, 654
- and private academies 532, 536, 539–40, 551, 592, 599, 610
- stipends 524
- of students from Korea in China 301
- in the Yüan 16, 17
- see also* Confucian values; literacy; National University; schools, community; *she-hsüeh*; Tung-lin Academy
- “eighteen gentlemen of An-lung” 705
- elephants and war 160, 704
- elite, *see* literati; officials
- elixirs, *see* aphrodisiacs; drugs; immortality; Taoism
- embroidery, in tribute trade 232
- emigration of Chinese from China 2, 8, 559, 711, 722–5, 777
- emperors 2, 9, 109, 111, 343–4, 363, 441, 545, 595, 635, 639, 651, 665, 703
- see also names of emperors*
- empresses (*hou*), *see names of emperors, consorts of*
- empresses dowager (*t'ai-hou*) 101, 185, 325, 326, 329, 343, 346, 348, 352, 420, 437, 438, 441–3, 446–7, 461, 522, 658

GLOSSARY—INDEX

895

- see also* grand empress dowager
 encyclopedias (*lei-shu*) 734, 769,
 774–7
 encyclopedias, political (*cheng-shu*)
 727, 734, 769–70, 775–7
 Engke Temür 安克帖木兒 223
 entertainment for the emperor 405,
 414, 422, 438
see also Court of Imperial
 Entertainments
 envoys, *see* foreign relations;
 tributary relations
 epidemics 32, 44, 107, 123–4, 473,
 487, 586–7, 632
 epigraphy (*chin-shih hsüeh*) 735,
 778
 epitaphs (*mu-chih ming*, *mu-piao*)
 [type of writing] 730, 761
 eremitism 17, 58, 136, 154, 155–6,
 756–7
erb-chia chin-shih 二甲進士
 (second-class examination
 graduates) 737
 escort guards (*hu-wei*, *hu-wei ping*)
 176–7, 244–5
see also princely guards
 Esen 也先, 乜先, 頷森 300, 317,
 332, 334, 393, 398, 466–7;
 797
 as Mongols, Prince of the 466–7
 and the T'u-mu incident 322–31
 as Yeh-hsien 317
Essential documents of three reigns
 (*San ch'ao yao tien*) 609, 613,
 648
 Etsina 亦集乃 129
 as Chü-yen 129
 as I-chi-nai 129
 eunuchs
 palace school for (*nei shu-t'ang*)
 287
 in the Sung dynasty 364
 as tribute 301
 and the writing of history 751–2,
 757, 765
 in the Yüan dynasty 129, 364
 eunuchs 343
 in the Hung-wu reign 5–6, 141,
 150, 150 n111, 287
 in the Chien-wen reign 194, 198
 287
 in the Yung-lo reign 5, 212–14,
 231, 232–6, 247, 248, 259, 260,
 262, 263, 264–5, 267, 268, 287,
 358, 773, 791
 in the Hung-hsi reign 278, 280,
 282, 283
 in the Hsüan-te reign 286, 287–8,
 300, 301, 302, 303
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 5–6,
 306–9, 323, 324, 325–9, 326,
 328, 332, 336, 349
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 332–9
 in the T'ien-shun reign 339–40
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 345–50,
 366–76, 379, 387, 400, 440
 in the Hung-chih reign 351–6,
 358–64, 364–70, 371–6, 396–7
 in the Cheng-te reign 349, 358–
 64, Chapter 7 *passim*, 800
 in the Chia-ching reign 447, 449,
 456, 461, 463, 464, 465–6, 469,
 470, 476, 491–3, 505, 506, 507
 in the Wan-li reign 516, 519–22,
 527, 530–2, 533, 540, 547, 547
 n111, 550, 554, 555, 561, 591,
 597, 647
 in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 593–4
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 594–9,
 605–14, 648, 749–50
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 619–20,
 637, 638, 643, 650, 654
 in the Southern Ming, in the
 Yung-li reign 687–8, 692
 Europe, Europeans
 and China 2, 6, 7–8, 556, 559–

- Europe, Europeans (*cont.*)
 63, 568, 579–80, 587–90, 602–4, 699–700
 sources for 802–3
- evaluations, personnel 483, 527, 536–40, 541–5, 549, 555–6, 605–8
see also capital evaluation; supplementary service review
- “exalted duke” (*shang kung*), title created for Wei Chung-hsien 609
- examination graduates
 first-class (*i-chia chin-shih*) 737
 second-class (*erh-chia chin-shih*) 737
- examination quotas 20, 726
- examinations
 historical sources for 755, 778, 780
 military 375
 and official assignment 737
 palace 212, 424, 446
 provincial 425, 483
- examinations 3–4, 6
 in the Yüan 16, 17, 20, 94, 112
 in the Hung-wu reign 57, 108, 121–2, 127, 131, 147, 148, 149, 151–2, 173, 178–9
 in the Yung-lo reign 5, 184, 211, 212, 218–21
 in the Hung-hsi reign 280
 in the Hung-chih reign 364
 in the Chia-ching reign 446
 in the Wan-li reign 528, 534, 544, 546
 in the Southern Ming: in the Hung-kuang reign 650; in the Lung-wu reign 671, 673
 under Sun K'o-wang 705
 in the early Ch'ing 661
- exclusion policy in Japan 699–700
- executions, mass 135–6, 139–42, 150–2, 163, 172
- expositions (*shuo*) [type of writing] 728
- expositors-in-waiting (*shih-chiang hsüeh-shih*) 742
- expunged (*ko-ch'u*) [referring to a period in history, the Chien-wen reign] 202
- “eyes and ears” of the emperor, see Censorate
- faction (*tang*) 532
- factionalism 12, 22, 37–43, 48, 62, 444, 743, 748, 750–1, 810
 historical sources for 767, 807
- factionalism
 in the Hung-wu reign 138–42
 in the Chien-wen reign 199
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 338–9
 in the T'ien-shun reign 345, 360
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 360–1, 362, 368
 in the Hung-chih reign 354
 in the Chia-ching reign 443–50, 453–7, 483–5, 490–510
 in the Wan-li reign 516–17, 521, 527, 528, 529, 532–6, 567–74, 575, 577, 581, 583, 590, 599
 in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 591–5
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 595–603, 605–11, 749–51
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 613–14, 620, 627–31, 634
 in the Southern Ming: in the Hung-kuang reign 642, 644, 646–50, 653–5, 657; in the Lu regency 693; in the Yung-li reign 686–90, 691–2
- falcons in tribute trade 301
- fame 516, 546
- family 63, 64, 68–9, 127, 156–7, 158, 161, 162, 173, 535
- family genealogies (*chia-ch'eng*), *see also* genealogies
- famines 32, 37, 58, 60, 107, 281,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

897

- 310–12, 336–7, 356, 385, 386, 472–6, 479, 487, 504, 552, 587, 600, 601, 621–3, 631, 635
 historical sources on 756, 776
 311 map15
 fan in an assassination plot 411
 Fan 范 (a surname) 28
 Fan-ch'i 梵琦 114
 Fan-chih 繁峙 309
 Fan Hung 范弘 306
fan-li 凡例 (rules of compilation) 744, 754
 Fan Shou-chi 范守己 759, 801
 Fan Tsu-kan 范祖幹 149
 Fan Tsu-yü 范祖禹 218
 Fang 方, empress, *see* Chu Hou-ts'ung, consorts of
fang-chih 方志 (gazetteers, local histories, regional topographies), *see* gazetteers
 Fang Hsiao-ju 方孝孺 161 n159, 186–9, 201–2, 204
 Fang I-chih 方以智 807
 Fang Kuo-an 方國安 675
 Fang Kuo-chen 方國珍 29, 60, 72, 88, 96–7
 as Ch'ü, duke of 64
 major discussion of 36–7
 19 map2
 Fang Pin 方賓 211
fang-tan 訪單 (investigation belief) 543
 Fang Ts'ung-che 方從哲 529, 543, 581, 583, 598
 farmers, *see* peasants; tenant farmers
 fasting by emperor and imperial family 122, 125, 449
 fauna and flora, historical sources for 221, 775, 776–7, 780
fei 匪 (bandit) 29
 Fei clan 費氏 426
 Fei Hsin 費信 773, 792
 Fei Hung 費宏 424–6, 455, 462
Fei ti Ch'eng-li wang fu lu 廢帝成立王附錄 749
 Fen River 汾水 94, 621; 121 maps
Fen shu 焚書 552 n17
 Fen-shur Pass 汾水關 674
 Feng Chi 封績 140
 Feng-chieh 奉節 125
 Feng Ching-ti 馮京第 700
 Feng Ch'üan 馮銓 608, 611, 751
 Feng Fang 豐坊 459
 Feng Hsi 豐熙 459
 Feng-hsiang 凤翔 117
 Feng-hsien tien 奉先殿 (Palace of the Honoring Ancestors) 124–5
 Feng Meng-lung 馮夢龍 546, 564
 Feng Pao 馮保 521 n3, 522, 523, 528, 596
 Feng Sheng 馮勝 77, 97, 99, 100, 102, 103, 112–13, 116–17, 119, 124, 161, 170–4
 as Feng Tsung-i 112–13
 and the 1371–72 Mongolian campaign 129
 and the 1386–87 Mongolian campaign 157–8
Feng t'ien ching nan [shih] chi 奉天靖難 [事] 蹟 (An account of the campaign “to clear away disasters in response to Heaven's will”) 195 n24, 215, 748, 790
 Feng-t'ien Hall 奉天殿 109, 137, 159, 744; 110 map4
 Feng Tsung-i 馮宗異, *see* Feng Sheng
 Feng Ts'ung-wu 馮從吾 592–3, 599, 610
 Feng-yang 凤陽 44, 62, 116, 118, 200, 647; 253 map14
 and Ch'ing armies 657
 Chu Ti to reside at 139
 Chu Yüan-chang visits 127
 and imperial clan 688
 military installations at 645

898

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Feng-yang (*cont.*)
 population redistributed to 123–4
 1635 rebel attack on 622, 627
 viceroy at 642, 644
- Feng Ying-ching 馮應京 734
- Feng Yü 馮頤 382
- Feng Yüan 馮瑗 772
 fiction 204, 221, 764, 790; *see also*
 novels; storytelling
- filial respect 195, 280, 535, 715, 762
see also Ancestral Temple;
 Confucian values
- fire
 as basic element 403 n1, 774
 and destruction of books 813
- firearms 248, 321, 426, 565, 568,
 576, 580–3
see also Artillery Camp;
 gunpowder; rockets
- fires
 1402 Nanking palace 201, 730
 1421 Peking palace 241
 1520 Ta-t'ung garrison 451
 1522 emperor's traveling
 quarters 464
 1522 empress dowager's quarters
 447
 1525 empress' quarters 462
 1534 Nanking Ancestral Temple
 459
 1539 emperor's traveling quarters
 480
 1541 Peking Ancestral Temple
 460
 1541 Peking palace 416, 438, 799
 1547 empress' quarters 462
 1557 Forbidden City 478, 487–8
 1561 emperor's residence 488, 506
 1596–97 Peking 589, 746
 1621 Hangchow 604
 1629 Peking 604
- fiscal policy, *see* economy
- fish
 taxes on 650
- and tribute trade 301
- fishing 432, 434, 495, 723–4, 777
- Five Classics 219–20
see also *Great compendium of the
 five classics and the four books;*
Wu ching ta ch'üan
- floods 59, 60, 198, 255, 298, 310–
 12, 334–7, 355–7, 427, 479,
 487, 520, 534, 552, 586, 590,
 604, 632, 635
- and books 813
 historical sources for 747, 776
 311 map15
- Fo-lang-chi 佛郎機 770
- folklore, sources for 765–6, 809
- Foochow 福州 23, 97
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 718
 Ch'ing conquest of 676
 and Chu Yü-chien 665
 and Lung-wu court 667–76, 674
 and regent Lu 695
 Spanish mission to 560
 224 map9, 497 map23, 659
 map28, 664 map29, 696
 map30, 713 map31
- Forbidden City 148–9, 213, 241,
 407, 408, 411, 412, 416, 417,
 426, 433, 437, 438, 440, 464–5,
 477, 478, 487, 502, 508, 595,
 606, 639, 744; 243 map13
- foreign relations 2–3, 7–8, 24, 239–
 40, 257–72, 330; *see also*
 foreign trade; tributary
 relations
- sources for 755, 760, 770–4, 792,
 794–5, 805
- foreign relations
 in the Hung-wu reign 109, 165–
 6, 168, 168 n178, 169
 in the Yung-lo reign 221–36,
 274–5, 770, 792, 794–5
 in the Hung-hsi reign 278, 770,
 793
 in the Hsüan-te reign 289–91,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

899

- 298–303, 770, 793, 795
 in the Cheng-te reign 417, 438
 in the Chia-ching reign 450–3,
 453 n15, 455–7, 466–79,
 490–505
 in the Wan-li reign 557–84,
 587–90
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 602–4
 foreign relations
 with the Americas 505, 587–90,
 627
 with Annam 166, 168 n178, 183,
 205, 229–31, 270, 278, 288–91,
 470–1, 557–8, 760, 770, 771,
 773, 794, 234 map11
 with Brunei 166, 168 n178, 271
 n143, 271–2, 302
 with Burma 557–8, 589, 708
 with Cambodia 166, 168, 168
 n178, 229, 270, 271, 271 n143,
 272, 770
 with Champa 140–1, 166, 168
 n178, 229, 233–5, 270–2, 271
 n143, 302, 770
 with Fo-lang-chi 770
 with Hami 223, 257, 260, 261,
 393–7, 760, 798
 with Herat 223, 260, 261, 772
 with Holland 556, 602–3, 614,
 631, 710, 722–5
 with Hormz 168 n178, 236
 with India 168 n178, 233–6
 with Japan 7–8, 770, 771, 773,
 774, 795; in the Hung-wu reign
 128, 140–2, 155, 168, 168 n178,
 269; in the Chien-wen reign
 269; in the Yung-lo reign 183,
 205, 221, 269–70, 300; in the
 Hsüan-te reign 300; in the
 Cheng-t'ung reign 319; in the
 Chia-ching reign 490–510; in
 the Wan-li reign 558, 563, 565,
 566–74, 699; in the T'ai-ch'ang
 reign 587–90; in the T'ien-ch'i
- reign 603; in the Ch'ung-chen
 reign 615, 627, 631; in the
 Southern Ming: in the Hung-
 kuang reign 699; in the Lung-
 wu reign 699–700; in the Lu
 regency 699–701
 with Java 166, 168 n178, 233–5,
 270–2, 271 n143, 302, 770
 with the Jurchen 266–8, 389–91,
 574–84, 770, 794
 with Korea 7–8, 770, 774, 795; in
 the Hung-wu reign 165–7; in
 the Chien-wen reign 199; in
 the Yung-lo reign 183, 221,
 268–9, 792; in the Hsüan-te
 reign 301, 792–3; in the
 Cheng-t'ung reign 319; in the
 Ch'eng-hua reign 389; in the
 Wan-li reign 563, 565, 567–74,
 589, 700
 with Malacca 270, 271, n143, 272,
 433–4, 770
 with the Manchus 557–8, 574–
 84, 589–91, 600, 652 Chapter
 11, 770 n131, 771, 781–2
 with the Mongols 7–8, 760, 770,
 770 n131, 771–2, 781–2, 795,
 797, 798, 801; in the Hung-wu
 reign 120, 128–30, 139, 157–
 62, 164–5, 166, 317, 319, 397,
 399; in the Yung-lo reign 183,
 221–9, 237, 264–6, 317, 319,
 792, 794; in the Hung-hsi reign
 299; in the Hsüan-te reign 284,
 298–300; in the Cheng-t'ung
 reign 316–34, 337, 749; in the
 Ch'eng-hua reign 389–402; in
 the Hung-chih reign 389–402;
 in the Chia-ching reign 452–3,
 456, 466–70, 471–9, 483–4,
 801; in the Lung-ch'ing reign
 629; in the Wan-li reign 557–8,
 563, 566–7, 574–84, 589, 805
 with the Oirat (Western

900

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- foreign relations (*cont.*)
 Mongols) 223–9, 257, 258,
 265–6, 344, 393, 394, 466, 795,
 797
 with the Philippines 505, 560–2,
 587–90, 604, 614–15, 627, 631
 with Portugal 7–8, 433–4, 491,
 559–60, 710, 603–4, 615, 627,
 631, 692, 799, 802–3
 with the Ryūkyū Islands 168, 168
 n178, 319, 770, 771, 774
 with Samarkand 223, 258–61,
 772, 792
 with Siam 166, 168, 168 n178,
 233, 270, 271, 271 n143, 272,
 302, 558, 589, 770
 with Spain 505, 556, 559–62, 589,
 603–4, 614–15, 631, 710, 724
 with Srivijaya 166, 168 n178, 169,
 770
 with Tibet 130, 139, 261–4, 557,
 770, 795
 with the Timurid empire 223,
 256–64
 with Turfan 223, 257–8, 260,
 261, 452–3, 456
 with West Ocean states 168 n178,
 301–3
 foreign trade 1–2, 5, 8–9, 168–9,
 183, 222, 232–6, 256–72, 298–
 303, 317–19, 331, 350, 389–97,
 452–3, 456, 471–9, 484, 490–
 505, 558–62, 574, 575, 577,
 587–90, 602–4, 614–15, 627,
 631, 666, 669–71, 710
 historical sources for 773–4,
 777
 private 257, 270, 302, 319, 396–7,
 452, 490–505
see also foreign relations;
 tributary relations
 foreigners in China 559–63, 762,
 769, 814
see also Europe, Europeans;
 foreign relations; foreign trade;
- horse markets; tributary
 relations
 Formosa, *see* Taiwan
 Formosa Council 723; *see also*
 Dutch East India Company
 Formosa Strait, *see* Taiwan Strait
 Fou-liang 浮梁 78
 “foundation of the state, the” 516,
 547, 550; *see also* imperial
 succession
 Four, Gang of, *see* Gang of Four
 Four Assisting Offices (*Ssu-fu*
kuan) 143, 148
 Four Books (*Analects*, *Mencius*,
Doctrine of the mean, *Great*
learning) 122, 219–20
see also *Great compendium of the*
five classics and the four books;
Ssu shu ta ch'üan
 four defense commands (*ssu-chen*)
 644–5, 649
 France 627
fu 府 (prefectures) 778
 Fu, Prince of 福王 (1581–1641), *see*
 Chu Ch'ang-hsün
 Fu, Prince of 福王 (d. 1646), *see*
 Chu Yu-sung
 Fu An 傅安 259
 Fu-ch'eng 阜城 (district) 612
 Fu-chou 撫州, Kiangsi 79
 Fu I-li 傅以禮 813
 Fu I-ling 傅衣凌 802
 Fu-ning, earl of 撫寧伯, *see* Chu
 Yung
fu-pen 副本 (duplicate copy [of the
 veritable records]) 744, 752
fu-pi 復辟 (restoration to the
 throne) 329
 Fu-p'ing 富平 310
 Fu River 潻江 125; 126 map6
 Fu-shan 福山 harbor 33
 Fu She 復社 634 n154, 647
 Fu-shun Pass 撫順關 577, 581; 578
 map25
 Fu Ssu-nien 傅斯年 794

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

901

- fu tsung-ts'ai* 副總裁 (vice-supervisors of compilation) 741, 742
- Fu Wei-lin 傅維麟 757
- Fu Yu-te 傅友德 78, 101, 115, 170–3
- and 1371 Szechwan campaign 125–7
- and 1371–72 Mongolian campaign 129–30
- and 1388–89 Shan rebellions 157–61
- and 1391 Mongolian campaign 164–5
- Fu-yü 福餘 265, 397
- Fukien 福建 23, 26, 701, 711
- as Ch'en Yu-ting's base 72, 88, 96
- and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 716–21
- and Cheng Ching 725
- and Cheng Ho 232, 302
- Ch'ing conquest of 676, 679, 699, 720
- and economic prosperity 588
- fishing in 777
- governor of 573, 614
- historical sources for 780
- hydraulic engineering in 401
- and the Lung-wu court 663, 665–75
- maritime trade in 490–510, 559–62, 603, 604, 777
- merchants in 627
- and Ming loyalists 684, 693
- natural disasters in 310
- and the Portuguese 802–3
- rebellion in 312–14, 322, 336
- and regent Lu 695–7
- revenues from 645
- silver mines in 407
- and taxation 632
- 1367–68 Ming conquest of 97, 113–14
- troops from 567
- 659 map28, 713 map31
- Fukien, King of 閩王, *see* Teng Mao-ch'i
- funerals 411, 421
- furniture for imperial use 350
- furs in the tribute trade 267, 268, 575
- games, historical sources for 775
- gang (*tang*) 532; *see also* factionalism
- Gang of Four, influence on scholarly publishing 759, 815
- Ganglin 岡林 652
- garments as gifts to foreign states 267, 268
- garrison army (*shou-chen ping*) 176–7
- garrisons (*wei*) 7, 13, 28, 30, 31, 80, 84, 89, 91, 99, 104–6, 129, 139, 140, 160, 168, 170, 222, 242, 246–9, 251, 257, 267, 299, 319–31, 340, 373–6, 389–402, 403, 405–16, 420, 425, 436, 437, 449–53, 463, 468–70, 472–9, 485–90, 513, 566–7, 574–84, 645, 646, 711; 390 map19
- as (*chen*) [in Southern Ming] 714
- gazetteers (*fang-chih*) 728, 735, 772, 775, 787, 792, 804
- provincial (*t'ung-chih*) 727
- see also* history, local; history, regional
- gems as tribute gifts 257, 261, 302
- genealogy, studies on 807
- genealogies (variously *chia-p'u*, *chia-ch'eng*, *tsung-p'u*, *tsu-p'u*) 732, 760, 761, 780–1
- geography 221, 585, 666, 668, 671, 737, 774, 775, 792
- the study of (*ti-li*) 728, 729, 755, 766, 771, 774–6
- geomancy 547 n11
- Georgia 258; 224 map9
- Ghiyāth al-Dīn Naqqāsh 261

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

902

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Gifu Daigaku Kenkyū Hōkoku*
(*Jimbun Kagaku*)
岐阜大學研究報告 (人文科學)
789
- ginseng in tribute trade 268, 575
- giraffes, in tribute trade 235
- Goa 7
- Gobi 戈壁 desert 100, 102, 119, 129, 159, 162, 471–2
- “going out beyond the frontiers” (*ch'u-sai*) 395
- gold
- for imperial use 281, 348, 589
 - mining of 133
 - in private hands 411
 - in tribute trade 268, 278, 301, 577
- “gold flower” silver 297
- grain
- as basic element 403 n1
 - prices of 123, 487–8, 488 n27, 489, 524, 632
 - problems related to 132, 150–1, 153, 175, 190, 223, 321, 407–8, 485, 488–9, 586–7, 602, 645–6, 663, 672, 700, 711
 - sacrifices to the spirit of (*chi*) 137
 - as stipend 130, 149, 158, 174, 207, 422
 - transport of, in late Yüan 21, 22, 33, 36, 58, 60, 64, 88, 113
 - transport of, in Ming 122, 135–6, 238, 239, 249–56, 275, 276, 291, 293, 295–8, 320, 407, 413, 485, 498, 520, 524, 604–5, 756, 794
 - and tribute trade 268, 391, 476, 794
- grain tax 294–8, 486, 524
- granaries 151, 251, 252, 254, 255–6, 297, 327, 409, 426, 472, 485–6, 495, 497, 522, 637
- see also* relief grain; relief granary
- Grand Canal
- dredging of and repairs to 39–40, 58, 60, 239, 252–4, 552, 589
- effect of rebellions on 61–2, 199, 604–5, 652, 660–1, 716
- flooding of 310–12, 335, 356, 520
- and military expeditions 113, 660
- trade and shipping along 13, 64, 239, 252–4, 291, 297, 312, 414, 475, 520, 524, 587, 643, 651, 652, 658; 253 map14, 197 map8, 253 map14, 323 map16, 431 map22
- grand coordinator (*hsün-fu*) 292–3, 296; *see also* supreme commander
- Grand Court of Revision (*Ta-li ssu*) 146, 147, 151, 367–70, 743
- assistant secretaries of (*yu-ssu fu*) 743
- grand defender (*chen-shou*) 278
- grand empress dowager (*t'ai huang t'ai-hou*) 305–11; *see also* empresses dowager
- grand preceptor (*t'ai-shih*) 611
- Grand pronouncements (*Ta-kao*) 151, 152–6, 165, 178, 189, 789
- Grand pronouncements to the military officers (*Wu ch'en ta kao*) 159–60
- grand secretariat (*nei-ko*) and grand secretaries (*ta hsüeh shih*) 5, 6, 148–9, 210, 286, 358, 362, 366, 738–40, 740 n48, 742–4, 748, 751, 752, 763, 795, 808
- in the Hung-wu reign 148–9
- in the Chien-wen reign 182–3
- in the Yung-lo reign 208–10, 279, 284, 286–7, 786
- in the Hung-hsi reign 358
- in the Hsüan-te reign 358, 791, 792
- in the Cheng-t'ung reign 306–9, 319, 325, 358–9, 360, 792
- in the Ching-t'ai reign 332, 333, 337, 360

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

903

- in the T'ien-shun reign 340, 341, 345, 346, 358–64
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 351, 358–64, 364–70
 in the Hung-chih reign 354, 355, 357, 358–64, 364–71, 415
 in the Cheng-te reign: Chapter 7, 751, 800
 in the Chia-ching reign 441–9, 451–8, 462, 463, 465–6, 468, 470, 474, 482–5, 505, 507, 512, 745, 763, 801–2
 in the Lung-ch'ing reign 512, 512 n1, 513–14, 520, 763
 in the Wan-li reign 514–54, 539, 542, 572, 573, 581, 583, 763
 in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 594, 598
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 594, 598, 599, 606–9, 611
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 613, 614, 618–21, 627, 628, 634, 637
 in the Southern Ming: in the Hung-kuang reign 643, 644, 646, 649, 652; in the Lung-wu reign 666, 674; in the Lu regency 667; in the Shao-wu reign 679; in the Yung-li reign 677, 687, 691
Great canon for governing the world (Ching shih ta tien) 221
Great compendium of the five classics and the four books (Wu ching ssu shu ta ch'üan) 219
Great compendium of the philosophy of human nature (Hsing li ta ch'üan) 219–20
Great learning (Ta hsüeh) 122, 220
Great Ming code
 as *Ta Ming lü* 165, 175–6, 178, 189, 754, 769
 as *Ta Ming lü ling* 134
great review (ta-shen) 367–8
Great Wall 798
 in the Hung-wu reign 58, 100, 102, 103, 106, 171, 178, 222
 in the Yung-lo reign 183, 222–9, 244–5, 248–9, 249 n110, 320–1
 in the Cheng-t'ung region 320–2, 322–31
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 7–8, 373, 389–402
 in the Hung-chih reign 389–40
 in the Wan-li reign 589
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 600, 616–19, 629, 636, 637; 225 map10, 323 map16, 390 map19
 Great Western Kingdom and Chang Hsien-chung 701–5
 Green Mountain 27
 guard commander (*wei chih-hui*) 393
 guards (*wei*), see garrisons
 guards, capital, see *ching-wei*
 guards, imperial, see *ch'in-chün*
 guerilla warfare 198–99, 231
 guest guardians (*pin-fu*) 191
 guilds 531
 gunpowder 416, 581, 583, 700
 guns, see firearms
 Gün-bilig 467, 473
 Hadramaut 235
 Hai-ch'eng 海澄 718
Hai fang tsuan yao 海防纂要 774
 Hai-sai 海西 Jurchen tribe 266–7, 577
 Hai Jui 海瑞 780
hai-lu chien-yün 海陸兼運 (joint sea and land transport) 251–4
 Hai-men 海門 675; 713 map31
 Hai-nan Island 海南島 382, 679
 Hai-ning 海寧 670
 hairpin
 as talisman 432
 as weapon 464

- hairstyle
 Manchu 662
 Chinese 716
Hājjai 'Alī 哈只阿力 395 n22
Hakata 博多 491; 497 map23
Halima, *see* *De-bzin-gségs pa*
 Hall for the Great Sacrifices (*Ta ssu tien*) 137
 Hall for Watching the Sacrifice (*Wang-chi tien*) 137
Hami 哈密 223, 317, 322; 224 map9
 as border guard 393–7
 as Camul 394
 as Khamil 394
 and Mansūr 452–3, 456
 1393 sack of 257
see also foreign relations, with Hami
Han 漢, emperor of, *see* Ch'en Li
Han 漢, emperor of, *see* Ch'en Yu-liang
Han, Prince of 漢王 *see* Ch'en Yu-liang
Han, Prince of 漢王 *see* Chu Kao-hsü
Han, Prince of 漢王, *see* Liu T'ung
Han 漢, Red Turban dynasty 41, 66, 72–92; 19 map2
Han-chou 漢州 101, 126; 126 map6
Han-chung 漢中 319, 386; 126 map6, 663 map27
Han 漢 dynasty
 border defense in 7
 comparison with marquises in Ming 105
 comparison with Ming emperors 508
 comparison with Ming military colonies 104
 end of 585
 eunuchs in 364
 as historical precedent 49, 132, 192, 444, 446, 673
 trade during 257
Han I-k'o 韓宜可 138
Han-k'ou 漢口 40, 41
Han Kuang 韓廣 598, 613, 618
Han-lin chi 翰林記 741, n52
Han Lin-erh 韓林兒 31, 40, 41, 42–3, 47–8, 51–6, 67–8, 70, 82, 88, 787; 19 map2
Han-lin hsüeh-shih 翰林學士, *see* Hanlin Academy, academicians of
Han 漢 people 1, 8, 107, 238, 336, 382–4, 720, 809, 814
 in service of the Ch'ing 662, 679; *see also* minority peoples and Ming-Han war 72–92
Han 漢 region 109
Han River 漢水 90, 101, 125, 621
 as center of T'ien-wan dynasty 40
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 635
 1637 rebel activity along 630
 121 map5, 126 map6, 385 map18, 659 map28
Han Shan-t'ung 韓山童 39–40
Han shu 漢書 727
Han-tan 邯鄲 113
Han-tung wei 罷東衛 394, 397
Han Wen 韓文 405, 406, 407–8
Han-yang 漢陽 40, 41, 47, 61, 65, 79, 81; 19 map2
Han Yung 韓雍 326, 372, 379–80
 handbooks for officials (*kuan-chib ta-chüan*) 769, 775, 778
 handicrafts 508, 587
Haneda Tōru 羽田亨 795
Hang 杭, empress, *see* Chu Ch'i-yü
Hangchow 杭州 13, 26, 32, 70, 434
 administration of 440
 fall of to Ch'ing 665, 670, 674, 675
 fall of, to Ming 88, 93, 96
 fires in 604
 as Hu Tsung-hsien's headquarters 498, 499–500
 and the Hung-kuang court 660

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

905

- Ma Shih-ying's retreat to 658
 Ming attacks on 72, 74
 natural disasters in 337
 and piracy 496
 and population redistribution 123
 rebellion in 28
 troops from 503
 497 map23, 659 map28
 Hangchow Bay 杭州灣 660, 665
 n25, 666, 669, 693, 719
 Hanlin Academy 翰林院 5, 57, 408,
 731
 academicians of (*hsüeh-shih*,
Han-lin hsüeh-shih) 737, 741,
 742
 appointments to 152, 186, 364
 and Bureau of Historiography
 736
 and Chang Chü-cheng 528
 changes in 188
 and Ch'eng-Chu tradition 450
 in the Ch'ing 811
 and compilation 755
 established in Ming 108
 and factionalism 537
 historical sources on 756, 769
 officials selected from 742, 743
 role as princely counsellors 191
 and scholarly compilations 220
 scholars in, as imperial advisors
 147, 208–9, 241, 278–9, 284,
 287, 358, 360, 362–3
 as source of grand secretary
 appointees 149, 542
 Tung-lin supporters in 613
 and Wei Su 115–16
 and Yang T'ing-ho 445, 448, 449,
 454–5
 243 map13
 Hansan Island [Hansansōm] 閑山島
 572; 569 map24
 Hansōng 漢城, *see* Seoul
 Hao-chou 濠州 44, 45, 107, 117; 19
 map2
- and Red Turbans 62–3, 68, 69
 surrender to Ming 93
 Heaven (cosmic order) 219, 361,
 413, 417, 418, 421, 422, 436,
 447, 479, 545, 582
 Mandate of 11, 50, 52–3, 102,
 107, 123, 556–7
 Son of 515, 584
 spirit of (*t'ien-shen*) 406
see also altars of state, to Heaven;
 Temple of Heaven
 heir 444 n6
 heir apparent
 Chu Piao (to Chu Yüan-chang)
 55, 111, 112, 164
 Chu Yün-wen (to Chu Piao) 164,
 170, 178
 Chu Kao-chih (to Chu Ti) 209–
 10, 214, 238–9, 45, 277–8
 Chu Chan-chi (to Chu Kao-chih)
 284–5
 Chu Ch'i-chen (to Chu Chan-
 chi) 305–7
 Chu Chien-shen (to Chu Ch'i-
 chen) 326, 337, 361
 Chu Chien-chi (to Chu Ch'i-yü)
 338
 Chu Yu-t'ang (to Chu Chien-
 shen) 347–8
 Chu Hou-chao (to Chu Yu-t'ang)
 353, 357, 403, 408
 none (to Chu Hou-chao) 426,
 427, 441–5
 Chu Tsai-huo (first to Chu Hou-
 ts'ung) 462
 Chu Tsai-hou (second to Chu
 Hou-ts'ung) 462
 Chu I-chün (to Chu Tsai-hou)
 514
 Chu Ch'ang-lo (to Chu I-chün)
 517
 Chu Yu-chiao (to Chu Ch'ang-
 lo) 594–5
 none (to Chu Yu-chiao) 607, 611

- heir apparent (*cont.*)
 Chu Tzu-lang (to Chu Yu-chien) 641
 false claimants (to Chu Yu-chien) 653–5
 Chu Yü-yüeh (to Chu Yü-chien) 658, 660, 678
 Chu Tz'u-hsüan (to Chu Yu-lang) 692
- heir apparent
 in the Hung-wu reign 111–12, 124, 131, 164, 170, 172
 in the Chien-wen reign 186ff
 in the Yung-lo reign 277; 243 map 13
 in the Hung-hsi reign 285, 286
 in the Hsüan-te reign 306, 307
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 326, 344–5
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 333, 337–9, 340, 344–5
 in the T'ien-shun reign 345
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 346–8
 in the Hung-chih reign 352
 in the Cheng-te reign 426, 427, 441–5
 in the Chia-ching reign 462, 479–82, 507, 513, 518
 in the Wan-li reign 516–17, 538, 540, 542, 547, 548–50, 554–6, 642
 in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 594–5
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 607
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 641–2
 in the Southern Ming: in the Hung-kuang reign 635–5, 657; in the Lung-wu reign 678
- heir apparent, education of 111, 124, 188, 513, 514–15, 518–19, 547, 654, 742
- Heng-chou 衡州 337, 635, 704, 659 map 28, 696 map 30
- Heng-yang 衡陽 704
- Herat 哈烈 223, 259 224 map 9
- historical sources for 772
see also foreign relations, with Herat
- hereditary military nobles (*hsün-ch'en*) 646, 647, 660, 661
- hereditary nobility 177–8, 283, 294, 334, 340, 463, 742, 757; *see also* duke; marquis
- hermits, biographies 762; *see also* eremitism
- heterodoxy 38, 51, 59, 122, 147
- Hetu Ala [Hetu-ala] 赫圖阿拉 575, 580–2; 578 map 25 as Hsing-ching River 575
- Hideyoshi, *see* Toyotomi Hideyoshi
- historical precedents (*chang-ku*) 355, 449
 for consort family power 353
 for court practices 143, 449
 for eunuch power 350, 412, 599
 for examination quotas 280
 for exemption from mourning 526
 for grand coordinator 292
 for Hanlin Academy 362–3
 for lawcode 134
 for minority peoples' administration 509
 for name of province 320
 for princes 132, 192, 428
 for regents 217, 367
 for resistance 814
 for ritual 444–6, 450
 for rulership 218–20, 241, 509, 511, 673
 for sacrifices 124
 for trade intendencies 169
 for transport system 251
 for war 326, 371, 601
- historical record, revision of 185–6, 201, 214–18, 355, 365, 392–3, 401–2, 412, 449–50, 508, 609, 613, 672, 748–50, 751, 752–3, 786–7, 789, 790, 813

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

907

- historical writings, categories
defined 727–8
- histories
local (*fang-shih*), *see* gazetteers,
history, local
miscellaneous (*tsa-shih*) 727, 764
national (*kuo-shih*) 736, 753, 760
nonofficial/unofficial (*yeh-shih*)
731–2, 736, 758–9, 764, 786,
808
official/standard (*cheng-shih*) 727,
736, 744, 746, 756, 796, 799,
801
private/semi-official (*pieh-shih*)
727, 760, 764, 799
- historiographer, official (*shih*, *shih-kuan*) 736
- historiography 202, 217, 274, 303–
4, 306–7, 335–6, 349, 353,
439, 454 n16, 512, 514, 522–3,
550–1, 553, 564, 567, 572, 584
in the Ch'ing 809–13
major discussion of: Chapter 12
official 102, 116, 758, 784,
810–11
socialist 785–6, 815
- historiography in the Ming
innovations in: collections of
writing on state affairs 767–9;
critical attitude toward sources
726, 729–32, 757, 758, 760,
790, 791; encyclopedias 774–7;
fine printing 729; genealogies
781; government sponsored
compilations 728–9, 804;
memorials of an individual 734,
767–8, 796; quality of
gazetteers 735, 778–9, 804
- history
local 766, 777–81
regional 735, 777–81
- history, division of (*shih-pu*) [a
book classification category]
727–8, 753, 769, 778
see also chi-pu; tzu-pu
- Ho 胡 (surname; in Chinese, Hu)
229
- Ho Chen 何眞 24–5, 72, 97; 19
map2
- Ho Ch'i-ming 何起鳴 537
- Ho Ch'iao-yüan 何喬遠 757, 780
- Ho-chou 和州 Anhwei 47, 68
- Ho-chou 河州 (in Shensi/Kansu)
318
as tea-horse market 318
- Ho De 胡杰, *see* Lê Hán-thu'o'ng
- Ho fang i lan* 河防一覽 776
- Ho-fei 合肥 161, 163
- Ho Hán-thu'o'ng, *see* Lê Hán-
thu'o'ng
- Ho-hsien 合縣 47
- Ho Ju-ch'ung 何如寵 619
- Ho Liang-chün 何良俊 766
- Ho-nan 河南 52
- Ho-ning, Prince of 和寧王, *see*
Arughtai
- Ho-t'ao 河套, *see* Ordos
- Ho T'eng-chiao 何騰蛟 681–2, 686,
692
- Ho Wen-hui 何文輝 (adopted son
of Chu Yüan-chang) 127
- Ho Wen-yüan 何文淵 332
- Ho Wu-tsou 何吾騤 620
- Ho-yang 和陽 47
- Ho Yao-ch'i 郝搖旗, *see* Ho Yung-
chung
- Ho Yung-chung 郝永忠 683
as Ho Yao-ch'i 683 n39
- Hōja Asan 434
- Holland 556, 602–3, 614, 631, 710,
722–5
see also foreign relations, with
Holland
- Honan 河南
bandits in 413–14, 646
Ch'ing penetration of 655, 656,
657
- eunuchs from 650
- garrisons in 321, 645, 651
- and grain production 587

- Honan (*cont.*)
 historical sources for 763, 776
 as home of Chaghan 20, 785
 imperial estates in 642
 land survey of 527–8
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 635
 militia armies in 67, 94
 Ming conquest of 96–7, 112
 natural disasters in 59, 310,
 336–7
 officials to 292
 rebel activity in 621–3, 629–31
 as Red Turban stronghold 43
 relief in 298 n200
 silver from 566
 troops from 327
 311 map15, 624–5 map26
- Honan, prince of 河南王, see Kōkö Temür
- Hong Kong 香港 806
- Hong taiji 洪台吉 582–3
- Hopei 河北 99, 113, 115, 596; 311
 map15
 water conservancy in 357
- Hormuz 忽魯謨斯 168 n178, 236;
 224 map9, 234 map11
- horse markets 264, 267, 278, 317–
 19, 476–7
- horses 129, 178, 199, 248, 257, 261,
 264–8, 299, 300, 301, 317–19,
 321, 322, 324, 366, 396, 399,
 525, 567 n30, 568, 576, 577
 riding of 403, 404, 439, 514, 675
- Hoshi Ayao 星斌夫 794
- Hosokawa 細川 491–2
- hou* 后, *see names of emperors, consorts of*
- hou* 候, *see marquis*
- Hou chien lu* 後鑒錄 799
- Hou Hsien 侯顯 213, 232–3, 262
- Hou Ta-kou 侯大狗 377, 379
- Household Administration of the
 Heir Apparent (*Chan-shih fu*)
 111, 188, 742
- household registration 123, 183,
 309–12, 388–9, 454, 469, 509,
 576
- households, military 183, 372–3,
 376, 380, 409, 414, 509, 566,
 579, 608
- Hsenwi, *see Mu-pang*
- Hsi-ch'ang* 西廠 (Western Depot)
 349, 352
- Hsi-feng Pass* [*Hsi feng-k'ou*]
 喜峰口 421; 225 map10, 419
 map20
- Hsi hai chin shih* 洗海近事 774
- Hsi-hua district* 西華縣 386
- Hsi-liang* 西涼 129
- Hsi-liao River* 西遼河 (*Shira Muren*) 397
- Hsi Ning* 喜寧 325–9
- Hsi-ning* 西寧, as tea – horse
 market 318
- Hsi River* 西河 97, 678, 679; 378
 map17, 659 map28, 696 map30
- Hsi Shu* 席書 448–9
- Hsi-tsung* 熹宗, *see Chu Yu-chiao*
- Hsi-tsung shih lu* 熹宗實錄 750, 751
- Hsi yang fan kuo chih* 西洋番國志
 792
- Hsi-yang kuo* 西洋國, *see West
 Ocean, Western Oceans*
- Hsi yü fan kuo chih* 西域番國志 260
 n123, 792
- Hsi yü hsing ch'eng chi* 西域行程記
 260 n123, 772, 792
- Hsi yüan wen chien lu* 西院聞見錄
 765
- Hsia* 夏, empress, *see Chu Hou-chao, consorts of*
- Hsia Hsieh* 夏燮 782, 784, 789, 791,
 798, 799
- Hsia-men* 廈門 (Amoy) 559, 694
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 714,
 717, 719, 721, 722
 and Cheng Ching 724
 and Cheng Tsai 697

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

909

- and Dutch traders 603
 and regent Lu 695, 698, 699 n51
 497 map23, 696 map30
Hsia 夏 state 41–2, 108, 118; 19
 map2
 and Ming Yü-chen 65, 100–1
 surrender to Ming 42
 1371 campaign against 125–7
Hsia Wan-ch'un 夏完淳 694 n46
Hsian 謢 Yen 夏言 457–9, 466, 468,
 470, 474–6, 482–4, 493, 494,
 505
Hsia Yüan-chi 夏元吉 211, 275,
 278–82, 286, 290, 302, 791, 793
Hsiang, Prince of 襄王, *see* Chu
 Chan-shan
Hsiang, prince of 湘王, *see* Chu Po
Hsiang chien 相鑒 (The prime
 minister's mirror) 142
Hsiang-chou 象州 683
Hsiang Chung 項忠 372, 387, 388,
 399, 400
Hsiang 湘 region 109
Hsiang-shan 香山 county 559
Hsiang-t'an 湘潭 686
Hsiang Ts'ai 項蔡 28
Hsiang-yang 襄陽 90, 101, 125
 Chang Hsien-chung attacks 631
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 635, 638
 rebellions in 384–9
 385 map18, 633 map27, 659
 map28
Hsiao Ch'i 蕭岐 150
Hsiao Ching 蕭敬 354
Hsiao Ching-mao 蕭景茂 26–7
hsiao fan 削藩 (reducing the
 feudatories) 192
Hsiao-hsi Fei 小西飛, *see* Konishi
 Joan
Hsiao I 蕭儀 241
Hsiao-ling 孝陵 (Filial Piety
 Mausoleum) 147
hsiao-shuo 小說 (“small talk”) 728
Hsiao Ta-heng 蕭大亨 771
Hsiao tien chi pien fu k'ao
 小典紀年附考 813
Hsiao-tsung 孝宗, *see* Chu Yu-
 tang
Hsiao-tsung shih lu 孝宗實錄 750
Hsiao Tzu 蕭磁 339
hsiao wang-tzu 小王子, *see* Little
 Kings
Hsiao Wei-chen 蕭維禎 332
Hsiao Yün-chü 蕭雲舉 542 n10
Hsieh Chao-che 謝肇淵 766
Hsieh Ch'ien 謝遷 493
Hsieh Chin 解縉 156–7, 163, 208–
 9, 210, 215, 220, 278
Hsieh 謝 clan 493
Hsieh Kuo-chen 謝國楨 805, 806,
 808, 815
Hsieh Pen 謝蕡 799
Hsieh Tsai-hsing 謝冉興 84, 92
Hsieh Ying-fang 謝應芳 155
hsien 縣 (counties) 778
Hsien chang lu 憲章錄 730, 759
Hsien-hsia 仙霞 Mountain, Range,
 Pass 665, 676
Hsien-ling 獻陵, *see* Chu Kao-
 chih, tomb of
Hsien-luo kuo 暹羅國, *see* Siam
Hsien Nung 先農 116
hsien-sheng 先生 (the master) 307
Hsien-tsung 奕宗, *see* Chu Chien-
 shen
Hsien-tsung shih lu 奕宗實錄 752
Hsien-yang 咸陽 623
hsin chai 新宅 (new residence) 407
 n4
Hsin-chen 新鎮 115
Hsin-ch'eng Gate 新城門 (of Nan-
 ch'ang) 81, 84, 92
Hsin-ho 新河 76
hsin-hsueh 心學 (learning of the
 mind-and-heart) 218
Hsin-hui 新會 377, 704; 696
 map30
Hsin-kan 新淦 150

- Hsin Ming chi* 新明紀 (New Ming annals) 786
- Hsing*, Prince of 興王, *see Chu Hou-ts'ung*
- Hsing*, Prince of 興王, *see Chu Yu-yüan*
- Hsing*, Prince Hsien of 興獻王, *see Chu Hou-ts'ung*
- Hsing An* 興安 326, 332, 333, 338, 339
- Hsing ch'a sheng lan* 星槎勝覽 773, 792
- Hsing Chieh* 邢介 572
- Hsing-ching* 興京 River, *see Hetu Ala*
- hsing-chuang* 行狀 (accounts of conduct, curricula vitae) 730, 732, 761
- Hsing chung-shu sheng* 行中書省 (branch secretariat – chancellery) 56, 71, 112, 127, 136–7
- Hsing-ho* 興和 100, 119–20, 129, 226, 227; 225 map10
- Hsing-hua* 興化 504; 497 map23
- Hsing ko t'iao li* 興革條例 780
- Hsing li ta ch'üan* 性理大全 (Great compendium of the philosophy of human nature) (219–20, 729)
- hsing-pu* 行部 238
- hsing-sheng* 行省 (province) 105
- Hsing shu-mi yüan* 行樞密院 (Branch Bureau of Military Affairs) 71
- Hsing-su Sea* 星宿海 776
- hsing-tsai* 行在 (residence pro tempore, temporary) 242, 282–3
- hsiu-chuan* 修撰 (first-class compilers) 732, 736, 742, 742 n54
- Hsiu-ning* 休寧 662
- hsiu-ts'ai* 秀才 (budding talents, bachelor) 148, 743
- hsiu-ts'ai chih wen* 秀才之文 (language of the “budding talents”) 159–60
- Hsiung T'ien-jui* 熊天瑞 90
- Hsiung T'ing-pi* 熊廷弼 583, 600–2, 607–8, 806
- Hsiung T'ing-pi yü Liao-tung* 熊廷弼與遼東 806
- Hsiung Wen-ts'an* 熊文燦 614, 630
- Hsü* 徐, empress, *see Chu Ti*, consorts of
- Hsü Chen-ch'ing* 徐禎卿 766
- Hsü Chieh* 徐階 504–8, 518–19, 521, 526, 528, 533, 801
- Hsü Ch'ien-hsüen* 徐乾學 752
- Hsü Chin* 許進 406
- Hsü-chou* 徐州, Kiangsu 43, 46, 61, 62, 310, 432 as Chao Chün-yung's base 68
- Chu Ti* captures 200 as Kao Chieh's headquarters 656
- Ming defenses in 645, 653, 657 natural disasters in 604 rapids near 552
- surrender to the Ch'ing 679
- surrender to the Ming 93 and the Yellow River 357 197 map8, 253 map14, 431 map22, 659 map28
- Hsü-chou* 紹州, Szechwan – Kweichow border 381, 382, 383
- Hsü fen shu* 續焚書 552 n17
- Hsü Hai* 徐海 499–501, 801
- Hsü Hai pen mo* 徐海本末 801
- Hsü Hsi* 徐晞 307
- Hsü Hsia-k'o yu chi* 徐霞客遊記 735
- Hsü Hsiang* 徐祥 206
- Hsü Hsüeh-mo* 徐學謨 800
- Hsü Hui-tsu* 徐輝祖 200
- Hsü Hung-ju* 徐鴻儒 604–5
- Hsü Hung-tsu* 徐宏祖 735, 775

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

911

- Hsü I 徐義 64, 92, 93
 Hsü-i 盱眙 68, 657
 Hsü K'ai-jen 徐開任 763
 Hsü Kao 徐杲 488
 Hsü Kuang-ch'i 徐光啓 776
 Hsü Li 徐理 206
 Hsü Lun 許論 772
hsü-pan 序班 (usher) 743
 Hsü Shou-hui 徐壽輝 27, 28, 31,
 40–1, 47–8, 61, 65, 74; 19
 map2
 Hsü Ta 徐達 46, 51, 55, 66, 71, 74,
 76, 79, 80, 81, 82–3, 85, 89, 92,
 93, 97, 100, 102–3, 128–9
 as Chu Ti's tutor 193
 daughter of 273
 as duke 107
 Northern campaigns 111–13,
 115–19
 son of 200
 1370 to Nanking 124
 Hsü T'ai 許泰 415, 437
 Hsü Ting-kuo 許定國 655–6
Hsü ts'ang shu 繢藏書 733, 763
 Hsü Tzu 徐鼎 813
Hsü tzu chih t'ung chien kang mu
 續資治通鑑綱目 753
Hsü wen hsien t'ung k'ao
 續文獻通考 734, 769
 Hsü Yu-chen 徐有貞 325, 335, 338,
 340, 356
 as Wu-kung, earl of 340
 Hsü-yung hsien 叙永縣 144
 Hsü Yü-hu 徐玉虎 795
 Hsüan-ch'eng 宣城 542
Hsüan-chiao yüan 禺教院 (Taoist
 Affairs Academy) 114
 Hsüan-fu 宣府 171t, 181, 226, 228,
 249, 520
 defense of 472
 1548 Mongol attack of 475
 as garrison city 321–5, 414, 415,
 452, 628
 historical sources for 772, 800
 as imperial residence 418–21, 436
 supplies for 473
 121 maps, 225 map10, 323
 map16, 390 map19, 419 map20,
 633 map27
 Hsüan Hsin 宣信 251
 Hsüan-hua 宣化 171t, 419
 Hsüan-K'un 宣寬 party 542–3
Hsüan Ta Shan-hsi san chen t'u
 shuo 宣大山西三鎮圖說 772
 Hsüan-te 宣德 reign, *see* Chu
 Chan-chi
 Hsüan-tsung 宣宗, *see* Chu Chan-
 chi
Hsüan-tsung shih lu 宣宗實錄 752,
 792
hsüan-wei ssu 宣威司 (pacification
 offices) 702
 Hsüeh Kuei 薛貴, *see* Toghoci
 Hsüeh Kuo-kuan 薛國觀 628, 634
 Hsüeh Lu 薛祿 289, 299
 Hsüeh Pin 薛斌, *see* Toghontai
hsüeh-shih 學上 (academicians [of
 the Hanlin Academy]) 737; *see*
 also Hanlin Academy,
 academicians of
 Hsüeh Ying-ch'i 薛應旜 730, 759
hsün-ch'en 勳臣 (hereditary military
 nobles) 646
 Hsün-chou 潤州 377; 378 map17
hsün-fu 巡撫 [touring pacifier,
 grand coordinator] 292
hsün-li 循吏 (upright or good
 functionaries) 762
 Hsün River 潤江 377
 Htigyaing 井梗 (直梗) 708
 Hu 胡, empress, *see* Chu Chan-chi,
 consorts of
 Hu-chou 湖州 28, 93, 123
 Hu Han 胡翰 149
 Hu-k'ou 湖口 78, 85, 87
 Hu Kuang 胡廣 209, 210, 285, 786
 Hu-kuang [Hukwang] 湖廣 56, 61,
 82, 83, 97, 144, 523

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

912

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Hu-kuang [Hukwang] (*cont.*)
 aborigine troops from 497
 and Chang Hsien-chung 634, 701
 Ch'ing penetration of 663, 674,
 690, 705
 financial records of 525
 government of 101, 448, 564
 and grain production 587
 and Li Ting-kuo 703, 706
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 656
 Ming defenses in 645, 651
 Ming loyalists in 666
 minority uprisings in 610
 natural disasters in 310
 officials in 649
 pacified by Ming 89
 rebel activities in 336–7, 384–9,
 621–3, 629–31, 702
 relief in 298 n200
 ships from 251
 and Sun K'o-wang 704–5
 and taxation 409, 671
 timber from 238
 troops from 315, 567, 675
 and the Yung-li court 676–9,
 681–6
 311 map15, 624 map26, 659
 map28
 Hu-kuang 湖廣 party, *see* Ch'u
 party
 Hu-lao Pass 虎牢關 657
 Hu Mei 胡美 79, 81, 97
 Hu 湖 region 109
 Hu Ta-hai 胡大海 71, 77, 78, 79
 Hu Te-chi 胡德濟 78, 80, 84, 86,
 100
hu t'ieh 𠂇帖 (household certificate)
 123
 Hu-t'o 濮沱 River 199
 Hu Tsung-hsien 胡宗憲 498–503,
 507, 801
hu-wei 護衛 (escort guards, princely
 guards) 177, 244–5
hu-wei ping 護衛兵 (escort guards)
 176
- Hu Wei-yung 胡惟庸 155, 162–4,
 168, 269, 788
 case of 137–42
 "Hu Wei-yung tang an k'ao
 胡惟庸黨案考" 788
 Hu Yen 胡巒 209, 210
 Hu Ying 胡湧 332, 337, 339
Hua i yü 華夷譯語 771
 Hua-kai Hall 華蓋殿 744
 Hua-shan 華山 26
 Hua Yün 花雲 74
 Huai, Prince of 懷王, *see* Tugh
 Temür
 Huai-an 淮安 93, 200, 252
 Ch'ing conquest of 657
 governor of 531, 541
 Ming defenses in 645
 197 map8, 253 map14, 659 map28
 Huai-ch'ing 懷慶 99
 Huai-jou 懷柔 129
 Huai-lai 懷來 324, 475; 323 map16
 Huai River 淮河 59, 118, 200, 357,
 642
 and bandits 414
 and Ch'ing armies 657
 and Chu Yüan-chang's home
 region 11, 127
 in grain transport system 252
 historical sources for 776
 and Ming defenses 644–5
 natural disasters along 310–12,
 336–7, 487
 Red Turban activity along 39, 68
 and the Yellow River 335
 19 map2, 121 maps, 197 map8,
 253 map14, 311 map15,
 659 map28
 Huai-tsung 懷宗, *see* Chu Yu-
 chien
 Huai-yu 懷右 109
 Huan River 環河 117
Huan yü t'ung chih 實宇通志 755
 Huang Chang-chien 黃章健 788,
 790, 794, 797
Huang ch'ao chung chou jen wu

GLOSSARY – INDEX

913

- chih* 皇朝中州人物志 763
Huang Cheng-ming 黃徵明 699, 705
Huang-chou 黃州 65
huang-chung 皇莊 *see* imperial estates
Huang-chüeh Temple 皇(黃)覺寺 45
Huang Fu 黃福 282, 290
Huang Huai 黃淮 208, 210, 277–9, 286
Huang K'ai-hua 黃開華 797
Huang Kuang-sheng 黃光昇 759
Huang Ming chih fang ti t'u 皇明職方地圖 776
Huang Ming chih shu 皇明制書 789, 791
Huang Ming ching chi wen lu 皇明經濟文錄 768
Huang Ming ching shih shih yung pien 皇明經世實用編 734
Huang Ming ching shih wen pien 皇明經世文編 734, 768, 793
Huang Ming shih ch'ieh 皇明史竊 757
Huang Ming shih fa lu 皇明世法錄 734, 769
Huang Ming shih kai 皇明史概 757
Huang Ming shu 皇明書 757
Huang Ming Su-huang wai shih 皇明肅皇外史 759, 801
Huang Ming tien li 皇明典禮 187–8, 791
Huang Ming tsu hsün 皇明祖訓, *see* Ancestral injunctions
Huang Ming tsu hsün lu 皇明祖訓錄, *see* Ancestral injunctions
Huang Ming t'ung chi 皇明通記 758
Huang Ming t'ung chi ts'ung hsin lu 皇明通紀從信錄 758
Huang Ming wen hai 皇明文海 761
huang-niu 黃牛 (ox) 123
Huang-p'i 黃皮 28
Huang Pin-ch'ing 黃斌卿 693–4, 698, 700
Huang-shih ch'eng 皇史宬 (Imperial Historical Archives) 744, 745
Huang Shu 黃澍 649
Huang Tao-chou 黃道周 628, 665–6, 673
Huang Te-kung 黃得功 645, 658, 660
Huang-ti 皇帝 (August Ruler) 109
huang-ti 皇弟 (august younger brother) 326
Huang Tso 黃佐 741 n52
Huang Tsun-su 黃尊素 607
Huang Tsung-hsi 黃宗羲 733
Huang-tu 黃渡 169
Huang Tzu-ch'eng 黃子澄 170, 186–9, 192, 195, 198–201, 204, 280
Huang Yen 黃儼 268–9
Huang-yen 黃巖 district 36
Huang Yü-chi 黃虞稷 735, 753, 757
Huang Yün-mei 黃雲眉 786, 799
Huhehot 呼和浩特 478
 as Kuei-hua 478
Hui-an 惠安 county 780
Hui-an cheng shu 惠安政書 780
Hui-ch'ang, marquis of 會昌侯, *see* Sun Chi-tsung
Hui-chou 徽州 71, 123
Hui-jih 慧日 128
hui-kuan 會館 (merchant associations) 588
Hui-ti 惠帝, *see* Chu Yün-wen
Hui-ti 惠帝, *see* Toghon Temür
Hui-tsung 惠宗, *see* Chu Yün-wen
Hun River 渾河 580, 581; 225
 map10, 578 map25
Hunan 湖南 681
 and Ch'en Yu-liang 81
 Ming conquest of 87, 89, 92
 natural disasters in 337
 rebel activity in 65, 377, 811
Hung Ch'eng-ch'ou 洪承疇 622,

914

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Hung Ch'eng-ch'ou (*cont.*)
 636, 661, 663, 707–8
- Hung-chih 弘治 reign, *see* Chu Yu-t'ang
- Hung-chin 紅巾 rebellions 18; *see also* Red Turban rebellions
- Hung county 洪縣 383
- Hung-hsi 洪熙 reign, *see* Chu Kao-chih
- Hung-kuang 弘光 reign, *see* Chu Yu-sung
- Hung-lu ssu chu-pu* 鴻臚寺主簿 (registrars in the Court of State Ceremonial) 743
- Hung Pao 洪保 302
- Hung Taiji 皇太極, *see* Abahai
- Hung-tse Lake 洪澤湖 200; 253 map 14
- hung-wan* 紅丸 (“red pills”) 593
- hung-wan an* 紅丸案, *see* Red Pill Case
- Hung-wu 洪武 reign, *see* Chu Yüan-chang
- Hung-wu shih lu* 洪武實錄, *see* *T'ai-tsu Kao huang ti shih lu*
- hunting 432, 433, 439, 723–4
see also Chu Hou-chao, and martial display
- hunting dogs in tribute trade 301
- Huo-chen 火眞, *see* Khorghocin
- Huo T'ao 霍範 456–7, 458
- Hupeh 湖北 27, 28, 31, 38, 125, 384, 440, 681
 and Ch'en Yu-liang 81
 Ming conquest of 79, 87, 89, 92
 rebel activity in 65
- i* 議 (type of report) 767
- i* 翼 (wings, as military division) 71
- I, Prince of 沂王, *see* Chu Chien-shen
- I-ch'ang 宜昌 41
- i-chao* 遺詔 (will or posthumous instructions) 591
- I-chen 儀真 658
- I-ch'eng 翼城 309
- I-chi-nai 亦集乃, *see* Etsina
- i-chia chin-shih* 一甲進士 (first-class examination graduates) 737
- i-kung an* 移宮案, *see* Chang of Palace Case
- I-ling 夷陵 89
- i t'iao pien fa* 一條變法, 一條鞭法
see single assessment tax
- I-tsung 穀宗, *see* Chu Yu-chien
- I-tu 益都 21, 22, 43, 95; 19 map 2
- I-tu Mountain 迤都山 162
- i-tzu kuan* 譯字官 (translators) 743
 “I wen chih 藝文志” (a section of the *Official history of the Ming*) 753 n92
- i yüan-shuai fu* 翼元帥府 (wing commander headquarters) 91
- Ibrahim 亦不刺因 467
- Ilan 牙蘭 456
- Ili 伊犁 Valley 394
- Ilkhan Mongols 261
- immortality
 elixirs of 479–82, 508
 the pursuit of 174, 272–3, 465, 479–82, 505, 507–8
see also drugs; Taoism
- imperial audience 406, 408, 441, 443, 447–8, 448–9, 465, 476, 512 n1, 513, 517, 739, 747
- imperial authority 6, 21, 186–95, 205–6, 218–19, 275–6, 362–4, 511–12, 403–5, 444, 450, 465, 482–3, 508–10, 511–17, 529–30, 532, 536–8, 544–5, 551–3, 607, 619–20, 650, 669, 673–4, 682, 705–6, 748, 750, 754, 802
- Imperial Bodyguard (*Chin-i wei*) 152, 155, 172, 212–14, 308, 309, 338, 341, 352–3, 361, 368, 409, 414, 416, 423, 426, 436, 438, 447, 448, 449, 452, 461, 469, 470, 683, 687, 691, 721; 243 map 13

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

915

- historical sources for 769
Imperial catalogue (Ssu k'u ch'üan shu tsung mu) 728, 753, 764, 774
 Imperial City 328, 341, 344–5, 404, 415, 417, 418, 436, 438, 460, 465, 485, 488, 505, 554; 240 map12, 243 map13
 imperial clan 15, 175, 489, 627, 647, 649, 650, 662–3, 668, 763
see also empresses; empresses dowager; heir apparent; princes; imperial estates (*huang-chuang*) 345, 348, 357, 405, 447, 509, 515, 522, 627, 646, 663–4, 676, 677
 imperial example 125, 135–6, 218–19, 241, 509, 673
 imperial genealogy, *see T'ien huang yü tieh*
 imperial guards (*ch'in-chün*) 244–7
 Imperial Hat and Girdle Department 637
 Imperial Historical Archives (*Huang-shih ch'eng*) 744, 745, 750
 Imperial injunctions (*Ti hsün*) 303
 imperial inspection tours 294, 415, 418–23, 427, 430–6, 441, 464, 480; 419 map20, 431 map22
 imperial laundry 433, 438, 440
 Imperial Library (*Mi-shu chien*) 741
 imperial mausolea 116, 246–7, 421, 475, 597, 607, 627
 imperial order (*ch'in-ming*) 741
 imperial orders, drafts of (variously *yü*, *chao*, *ch'iib*) [document types] 761
 imperial park 418–19, 421, 422
 imperial procurement 5–6, 232–6, 239, 241, 275–6, 281, 309, 350, 353, 363, 366, 412, 418, 451, 465, 474, 479, 485, 487–8, 524, 565, 579, 639, 690
 imperial progress, *see* imperial inspection tours
 imperial seals 349, 420, 452
 imperial succession (*see also* blood line succession; heir apparent; succession by adoption) in the Yüan dynasty 12 in the Hung-wu reign 164, 177–8, 181, 184–5 in the Chien-wen reign 192, 195–6, 748 in the Yung-lo reign 216–18 in the Hsüan-te reign 305–6 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 326–30 in the Ching-t'ai reign 333, 337–8, 339 in the T'ien-shun reign 345 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 346–8 in the Hung-chih reign 352 in the Cheng-te reign 426, 427, 436–9, 441–2, 442 n3, 444–5 in the Chia-ching reign 461–2, 513 in the Wan-li reign 516–17, 529, 530, 532, 538, 540, 544–50, 554–6, 591, 593, 642 in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 594–5 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 611 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 641–2 in the Southern Ming: in the Hung-kuang reign 653–5, 663–5; after the Lung-wu reign 676–9 in the Ch'ing dynasty 811
 imperial treasures, *see* treasures, imperial Incense Armies, *see* Red Turban rebellions India 233, 258, 314, 559, 621 n118; 224 map9, 234 map11 *see also* foreign relations, with India Indian Ocean 183, 235, 236, 270, 271, 303, 770

- infanticide 632
 infantry 247, 334, 374; *see also* Camp of the Five Armies;
 garrisons; military affairs
 inflation 588–90; *see also* grain,
 prices of
 ink slab 546; *see also* calligraphy
 Inner Asia 222
 inner court 4, 5, 6, 345, 358, 360,
 362–4, 397, 518, 534, 553
 in the Southern Ming 687–8, 692
 see also outer court
 Inner Mongolia 96, 97, 99, 102, 105,
 222, 264–6, 629
 Innocent X, Pope 692
Institutions of Chou, *see Chou li*
 integrated divisions 373–6, 400
 intendants (*see also* eunuchs)
 fiscal 404
 military 404, 438
 intercessory prayer ceremonies
 (*chai-chiao*) 355
 interpreters 322, 662
 Interpreters Institute 243 map13;
 see also College of Translators
 investigation brief (*fang-t'an*) 543
 investigations (*k'ao*) [document
 type] 757, 772
 investiture
 in the Hung-wu reign 104–5,
 109, 111, 120, 123, 130, 149,
 158, 159, 166–7
 in the Yung-lo reign 206–7, 226,
 229–30, 233, 264, 267, 268
 in the Hsüan-te reign 288–9
 in the T'ien-shun reign 340
 in the Hung-chih reign 353–4,
 393–4, 398
 in the Wan-li reign 564, 571, 575,
 589
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 608–9, 611
 in the Southern Ming: in the
 Hung-kuang reign 650, 651,
 667, 689; in the Lung-wu reign
 667, 712; in the Yung-li reign
 684, 688–9, 689 n43, 698, 703,
 705–6, 714, 714 n74; by the
 Chang Hsien-chung 702 n55;
 by Cheng Ch'eng-kung 714
 n73; in the early Ch'ing 710,
 715
 investiture
 rules for 754; *see also* Ancestral
 injunctions
 of Yüan regional leaders 20, 22,
 25, 29–33, 36–7, 60, 64, 79, 91,
 94, 104–5
 Iquan, Nicholas, *see* Cheng Chih-lung
 Iran 258, 261; 224 map9
 Iraq 258; 224 map9
 Irinjinbal 亦璘眞班 12
 iron 133
 in tribute trade 317, 319, 391
 iron placards and rules for nobility
 of merit 133
 iron plaque and rules for eunuchs
 364–5
 “ironmen” (Cheng Ch'eng-kung's
 armed, fighting unit) 719
 Irrawaddy River (大) 金沙江 314,
 315, 708; 696 map3
 irrigation 335
 historical sources for 756, 776,
 777, 778
 Ise 伊勢 491
 Isiha 亦失哈 213, 267
 Islam 259, 393
itu (Korean bureaucratic script) 134
 ivory 546
 Jabiyan 界藩 582; 578 map25
 jade, in tribute trade 257, 258, 261
 Jang Huang-ti 讓皇帝, *see* Chu
 Yün-wen
 Jao-chou 饒州 79
 Japan 日本
 envoys to 499

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

917

- 1592 and 1597 wars with 563,
567–74
horses from 319
“king of” 558, 571
publishing in 760
silver from 589
and Taiwan 814
and trade with Macao 603
and tribute 558
224 map9
see also foreign relations, with
Japan
- Java (Chua-wa kuo) 166, 168 n178,
233, 234, 302, 770; 235 map11
see also foreign relations, with
Java
- Jehol 热河 222, 397; 225 map10
- Jehovah 563
- jen-ch'en* 壬辰 (a cyclical year
designation) 28
- Jen-tsu 仁祖 (posthumous title for
Chu Yüan-chang's father) 119
- Jen-tsung 仁宗 (Sung emperor, r.
1023–63) 444
- Jen-tsung 仁宗, *see* Ayurbawada
- Jen-tsung 仁宗, *see* Chu Kao-chih
- Jen-tsung shih lu* 仁宗實錄 752,
792
- Jesuits 562–3, 591, 597, 692
- jewels 589
- Jidu 濟度 717–18
- Jib chih lu* 日知錄 765
- jib-li* 日曆 (daily records) 741
- jinong* 吉囊, 濟農 (Mongol viceroy)
467
- Jirgalang 濟爾哈郎 690
- Jobtei 卓布泰 707
- Ju Ch'ang 茹瑞 198, 199, 200, 206
- ju chia jen li* 如家人禮 (in
accordance with household
rituals) 124–5
- Ju T'ai-su 茹太素 153, 154
- Juan An 阮安 241
- Juan O 阮鶴 500
- Juan Ta-ch'eng 阮大誠 647–8, 650,
653, 657
- Jung-ch'ang, earl of 榮昌伯, *see*
Ch'en Chih
- Jung county 戎縣 383
- junior preceptor (*shao-shih*) 611
- Junta 準塔 657
- Jurchen 汝真 (女真) 13, 43, 222,
266–8, 326, 389, 398, 770
as conquerors of the Sung 1
historical sources on 813
leader of 557–8
major discussion of 574–84
see also Chien-chou; Hai-hsi;
Mao-lien; Wild Jurchen
- Kaegyōng 開京 167
- Kaesöng 開城 167
- Kai yü ts'ung k'ao* 歸餘叢考 784
- K'ai Chi 開濟 149
- k'ai-chung* 開中 (middleman) 123
- k'ai-chung fa* 開中法 (middleman
method) 250–1
- K'ai-feng 開封 20, 171t, 312
as a Branch Secretariat 112–13
Ch'ing advances toward
656–7
- and hydraulic engineering 357
- and Li Tzu-ch'eng 635
- and Ming defections to the
Ch'ing 655
- natural disasters in 331
- as Pei-ching, Ming northern
capital 114
- as Pien-liang 112, 326
- Red Turban seige and capture of
67, 94
- as Sung dynasty capital 326
- surrender to the Ming 97
- renamed 112, 114
- 19 map2, 121 map5, 385 map18,
633 map27
- K'ai-p'ing 開平 113, 117, 120, 228,
264; 225 map10, 390 map19

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

918

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- K'ai-p'ing wei 開平衛 227, 299
K'ai tu ch'uān hsin 開讀傳信 807
K'ai-yüan 開原 582–3
 historical sources for 772
 224 map9, 578 map25
K'ai-yüan t'u shuo 開原圖說 772
Kalgan, *see Chang-chia k'ou*
Kalmuck 393
Kan-chou, *Kiangsi* 贛州 90, 117
 Ch'ing defense of 690
 and loyalty to the Ch'ing 685
 and Lung-wu court 671
 1646 siege of 674–7, 684
 1648 siege of 686
 659 map28
Kan-chou 甘州, *Shensi*
 Mansūr's invasion of 452–3, 456
 as princely estate 170, 171t; 121
 maps
Kan River 贛江 90
k'an-ho 勘合 (tallies J. *kangō*) 269
Kanenaga 懷良 128
K'ang-hsi 康熙 reign 661 n21, 808,
 810–11
K'ang-lang shan 康郎山 Island 85
K'ang Mao-ts'ai 康茂才 53, 75–7
K'ang T'ai 康泰 81
kangō 勘合 *see k'an-ho*
Kansas City 585
Kansu [Kan-su] 甘肅 318, 557
 as border garrison 248–9, 394
 governor of 451
 Ming conquest of 98, 99, 102,
 115, 116
 natural disasters in 604
 officials to 292–3
 rebel activity in 622
 sources on 798
 390 map19
kao 詛 (pronouncements) 189
Kao, Emperor 高皇帝, *see Chu*
 Yüan-chang
Kao Ch'i 高啓 789
Kao Chieh 高傑 644, 653, 656
Kao-chih fang 詛勅房 739 n46, 742
Kao-chou 高州 129
Kao county 高縣 383
Kao huang-ti 高皇帝, *see Chu*
 Yüan-chang
Kao huang ti yü chih wen chi
 高皇帝御製文集 789
Kao Hung-t'u 高弘圖 644, 648, 649
Kao Ku 高穀 308, 333, 339
Kao Kung 高拱 512 n1, 513, 518–
 21, 521 n3, 522, 528, 530,
 533–4
Kao-ming 高明 681
Kao P'an-lung 高攀龍 533, 539, 598
Kao-yao 高要 562
Kao Ying-hsiang 高迎祥 623
Kao-yu 高郵 20, 138
 as Chang Shih-ch'eng's base 31–
 2, 62, 63, 93
 19 map2, 253 map14
k'ao 考 (investigations, studies) 757,
 772
k'ao-ch'a shih-i 考察拾遺
 (supplementary service review)
 537
k'ao-i 考異 (critical notes) 799
Karma-pa (a Tibetan religious
 order) 261–4, 417–18
Kelantan 急蘭丹 235; 234 map11
Keng Chi-mao 耿繼茂 691, 722
Keng Chung-ming 耿仲明 618, 691
Keng Ping-wen 耿炳文 117, 196
Keng ssu pien 庚巳編 732, 766
Keng Tsai-ch'eng 耿再成 80
Kerülen 脣朐 River 226; 225 map10
khaghan 可汗 108
Khaidu 海都 12
Khaishan 海山 12
 as Wu-tsung 12
Khalil Sultab 哈里 (grandson of
 Timur) 259
Kham 262
Khamil, *see Hami*
khan (prince) 398

GLOSSARY—INDEX

919

- Khara Khorum [Karakorum]** 哈爾和林 102, 117, 120, 128–9,
 166, 226; 224 map9, 225 map10
- Khara Nokhai** 哈刺那海 129
- Khingan Mountains** 興安嶺 226,
 397, 398
- Khitan** 契丹 people 397
- Khorassan** 258
- Khorghocin** 火里火眞 206
 as Huo-chen 206
- Khoshila** 和世璵 12
- Khubilai** 忽必烈 8, 11, 12, 15, 59,
 109, 261
- Kiangnan [Chiang-nan]** 江南 52,
 643
- Branch Censorate 70
- Branch Secretariat 56
- and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 720
- and Chin Sheng-huan 685
- Ch'ing control of 655, 662, 663,
 673–4
- as Ch'ing province 661, 661 n21
- fiscal reform in 795
- natural disasters in 310, 336
- region defined 661 n21
- religious establishments in 190
- and the Southern Ming 651
- and taxation 632, 650
- trade routes through 680
- and Wei Chung-hsien 608
 311 map15
- Kiangsi** 江西 23, 48, 158
- bandits in 413–14, 494, 504, 635
- Ch'en Yu-liang invades 83
- Ch'ing pacification of 684, 690–1
- and defense financing 671
- and economic prosperity 588
- and grain production 587
- Hu Ta-hai in 77
- and Li Tzu-ch'eng 658
- Ming conquest of 77–82, 89–90,
 92
- and Ming resistance 662, 666,
 672–4, 683
- natural disasters in 337
- rebellion in 312–14, 377, 423–30
passim, 434–5
- Red Turban activity in 61
- relief in 298 n200
- ships from 251
- timber from 239
- and trade 680
- troops from 675
- troops to 677
 429 map21, 659 map28, 713
 map31
- Kiangsu** 江蘇 20, 30, 32, 59, 112,
 154, 661 n21, 766, 776
- Kimiya Yasuhiko** 木宮泰彦 795
- king (*wang*) 393
- Kirin** 吉林 165
- Ko-chou** 隅州 village 26
- ko-ch'u* 革除 (expunged) 202
- k'o* 科 (offices of scrutiny) 152, 687,
 731
- K'o** 客, madame 596, 608, 612–13;
see also Wei Chung-hsien
- K'o tso hsin wen** 客坐新聞 732
- “Kōbutei to Butsu Dō ni kyō
 洪武帝と佛道二教” 789
- Koffler, Andreas** 692
- Kökö Temür** 橋廓帖木兒 19–23,
 89, 90, 93, 94–6, 97, 99, 100,
 102, 114–15, 118, 119, 128–9;
 19 map2
- historical sources on 785
- as Honan, Prince of 23
- as Wang Pao-pao 22, 114, 128
- Kokonor** 青海 130, 557
- Konishi Joan** 小西如安 570–1, 573
 as Hsiao-hsi Fei 570
- Konishi Yukinaga** 小西行長 568,
 571, 573
- Korea** 101, 111, 166, 168 n178, 317,
 563, 716, 770
 as ally of China 389
 as Ch'ao-hsien 167, 168 n178
 as Chosön 167, 168 n178, 268

- Korea (*cont.*)
 and 1592 and 1597 Korean
 campaigns 565–74, 700
 as Koryō 165–7, 268
 Manchu invasion of 629
 and Manchu vs. Chinese wars in
 610, 616
 and Nurhaci 575
 and printing of Chinese books 729
 and 1619 Liao-tung campaign 577
 224 map9, 569 map24
see also foreign relations, with
 Korea
- Koryō 高麗, *see* Korea
- Kou-lung 勾龍 137
- k'ou* 犯 (bandit) 29
- bowtow 167
- Koxinga 國姓爺 (Lord of the
 Imperial Surname), *see* Cheng
 Ch'eng-kung
- Ku, Prince of 谷王, *see* Chu Hui
- Ku-an 固安 616
- Ku-ch'eng 古城 630
- Ku Hsien-ch'eng 顧憲成 534–42,
 545
- Ku jang tsa lu* 古穰雜錄 766
- Ku Pa 顧八 28
- Ku-pei Pass [Ku-pei-k'ou] 古北口
 475
- Ku Ping-ch'ien 顧秉謙 606, 609,
 611, 752
- Ku Ssu-li 顧嗣立 761
- Ku Ta-yung 谷大用 420
- Ku T'ien-chün 顧天淳 542–3
- Ku Tso 顧佐 291
- Ku Yen-wu 顧炎武 369, 735, 765,
 766, 777
- Ku Ying-t'ai 谷應泰 563–4, 760,
 790
- Ku-yüan 固原 249, 399–400; 390
 map19
- Ku Yün-ch'eng 顧允成 539
- k'u-li* 酷吏 (rebellious functionaries)
 762
- Kua-chou 瓜州 658, 720; 253
 map14
- Kuan chen* 官箴 (Admonitions to
 bureaucrats) 303
- kuan-cheng* 觀政 (to observe
 government) 152
- Kuan-ch'eng 貫城 151
- kuan-chih ta-ch'iüan* 官制大全
 (handbooks for officials) 769
- kuan-so* 貫索 (constellation) 151
- K'uan Ch'e 寬徹 258
- Kuang 廣 region 109
- Kuang-han hsien 光漢縣 126
- Kuang-hsiao 廣孝, *see* Yao Kuang-
 hsiao
- Kuang-hsin 廣信 77, 78, 84
- Kuang-jao 廣饒 112
- Kuang-lu ssu shu-ch'eng*
 光祿寺署丞 (director in the
 Court of Imperial
 Entertainments) 743
- Kuang-ning 廣寧 170, 171t, 181,
 264, 321, 469, 601, 602; 121
 maps
- Kuang-tsung 光宗, *see* Chu
 Ch'ang-lo
- Kuang-tsung shih lu* 光宗實錄 749,
 750
- Kuang-tung hsin yü* 廣東新語 766
- Kuang-wu 廣武, Shansi 473
- Kuang-wu emperor 光武帝 (Han
 dynasty) 673
- Kuang yü t'u* 廣輿圖 775
- K'uang Chung 況鍾 296, 795
- Kuei, Prince of 桂王, *see* Chu
 Ch'ang-ying
- Kuei, Prince of 桂王, *see* Chu Yu-
 ai
- kuei-fei* 貴妃 (senior consorts) 273,
 346
- Kuei-hua 歸化, *see* Huhehot
- Kuei-lin 桂林
 Ch'ing conquest of 692
 and Chu Heng-chia 669

GLOSSARY—INDEX

921

- defense of 687, 691
 and Li Ting-kuo 704
 and the Portuguese 802
 and the Yung-li court 679, 681,
 683, 685
 378 map17, 659 map28, 664 map
 29, 696 map30
- Kuei O 桂萼 448, 453, 455–7
- Kuei-p'ing 桂平 377, 378 map17
- Kuei River 桂江 681; 659 map28
- Kuei-te 歸德 657; 633 map27, 659
 map28
- Kuei-yang 歸陽 702, 704–5, 707;
 696 map30
- K'uei-chang ko 奎章閣 16
- K'uei-chou 癸州 101
- K'un-lun Mountains [Kunlun
 Mountains] 崑崙山 130; 224
 map9
- K'un-ming 昆明 144, 702–3;
 145map7
- K'un-ming 昆明 Lake 707
- K'un-ning 坤寧 Palace 438
- K'un-shan 崑山 542
- kung* 公 (duke) 742
- Kung-ch'ang 鞏昌 100, 117, 119
- Kung Chen 鞏珍 792
- kung-ch'en* 功臣 (nobility of merit)
 133
- kung-fei* 積妃 (lesser consorts) 193
- Kung-min Hui ti 恭愍惠帝, *see* Chu
 Yün-wen
- Kung Yung-ch'ing 龔用卿 774
- K'ung Hsing 孔興 23
- K'ung Shang-jen 孔尚任 811
- k'ung-yin an* 空印案 (prestamped
 documents case) 135–6
- K'ung Yu-te 孔有德 618, 682–3,
 691, 692, 704
- Kuo ch'ao hsien cheng lu*
 國朝獻徵錄 732, 761
- Kuo ch'ao lieh ch'ing chi*
 國朝列卿紀 763
- Kuo Cheng-yü 郭正域 547–9
- Kuo ch'u ch'ün hsiung shih lüeh*
 國初群雄事略 784, 787
- Kuo ch'üeh* 國榷 751, 759, 786, 789,
 790, 806
- kuo-fa* 國法 (the laws of the state)
 175
- Kuo Hsün 郭勛 453–4, 465, 470,
 482–3
 as Wu-ting, marquis of 470, 482
- Kuo Huan 郭桓 150–1, 154
- Kuo Po-kung 郭伯恭 794
- Kuo River 涡水 312
- kuo-shih* 國史 (history of the Ming
 empire [a subsection of the
 Imperial catalogue]) 753
- kuo-shih* 國史 (national history)
 736
- Kuo shih ching chi chih* 國史經籍志
 735
- Kuo shih k'ao i* 國史考異 784
- Kuo-shih kuan* 國史館 (Bureau of
 Historiography) 736–46
- Kuo T'ing-hsün 過廷訓 762
- Kuo Tsao-ch'ing 郭造卿 772
- Kuo Tzu 郭資 255
- Kuo-tzu chien* 國子監, *see* National
 University
- Kuo Tzu-hsing 郭子興 45–7, 48,
 52, 62, 63, 68–9; 19 map2
- Kuo Wei-ching 郭維經 674
- Kwangsi 廣西 97, 730, 802
 and aborigine troops 497
 Annam invasion of 230, 558
 and Ch'en Pang-fu 687
 Ch'ing penetration of 679–80,
 690–3, 705
 historical sources for 779
 and Lady Chi 351
 and Li Ting-kuo 704
 and the Lung-wu court 671–2
 Ming campaigns in (1460s) 347,
 349
 Ming conquest of 113
 officials in 332, 666, 677

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

922

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Kwangsi (*cont.*)
 provincial government of 676, 681
 rebellions in 336, 377–80, 610
 treasury of 522
 and the Yung-li court 683, 685
 378 map17, 659 map28
- Kwangsi, duke of 廣西公, *see*
 Ch'en Pang-fu
- Kwangsi-Chuang Autonomous Region 廣西壯族自治區 133, 377
- Kwangtung 廣東 24, 25, 90, 96, 97, 701
 bandit activity in 635, 672
 Ch'ing conquest of 676, 677, 680, 691–3, 705
 and economic prosperity 588
 governor of 520
 historical sources for 766
 and Li Ting-kuo 704, 706
 and the Lung-wu reign 671–2, 686–90
 and maritime trade 490–510, 559–60, 603
 Ming loyalists in 674, 681, 683
 officials in 332, 470, 523, 666
 passes to 685
 rebellions in 336, 377–80
 and the Shao-wu court 678
 troops from 572, 675, 378 map17, 659 map28, 713 map31
- Kwarazm 258; 224 map9
- Kweichow 貴州 701, 701 n53
 becomes a Chinese province 8
 and Chang Hsien-chung 702
 Ch'ing penetration of 706–7
 government of 564
 historical sources for 779
 officials in 677
 as source for horses 318
 and Sun K'o-wang 705
 and taxation 579
 troops from 315, 675
- uprisings in 336, 377, 602, 610
 378 map17, 696 map30
- Kwon 權, consort, *see* Chu Ti, consorts of
- Kyōto 東京 587
- Kyūshū 九州 128
- labor service, *see* corvée
 laborers 40, 60, 239, 240–1, 335, 357; *see also* soldiers
 lacquerware, in tribute trade 268
- Lai-chou 萊州 618
- Lai-wu chi 萊蕪集 797
- lakes, historical sources on 779
- lamas, 261, 417–18; *see also* Buddhism, monks
- Lambri 南渤利 233, 235, 302, 234 map11
- Lan-chou 蘭州 117, 118, 129, 399
- Lan-yang 蘭陽 657
- Lan Yü 藍玉 102, 128, 129, 144–6, 157–62, 179
- impeachment and execution of 169–73
- land
 allocation of, on Taiwan 724
 confiscation of 133, 140, 626
 government 296–8
 private 296–8
 reform 167
 studies on 807
 survey of 527–8; *see also* “yellow registers”
- land tax 254–6, 295–8, 489, 509, 579, 583, 588, 626
- landlords 312–14, 336, 544, 626, 632, 663, 671, 672, 815
- lang-chung 鄡中 (bureau director) 737
- Lang-shan 狼山 413
- Lang-s'on [Langson] 諒山 230, 290; 234 map11
- Lang Ying 鄭瑛 751, 766
- languages, foreign 743, 770–1, 772

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

923

- lanterns in palace celebrations 407,
416
- lao-jen* 老人 (local elders) 180
- Laos 老撾 8, 710
- “Latter Ming” dynasty 705; *see also* Sun K’o-wang
- law
and the judicial system 150–7,
179–81, 280–1, 352, 367–70,
535, 551, 552
records of 737, 769, 803
studies on 789
- law code 57, 108, 156–7, 178, 189,
221, 352, 408, 754
see also Ancestral injunctions;
Grand pronouncements; Great
Ming Code
- Lê 犇 558
- Lê Hán-thu’o’ng 黎漢蒼 229
as Ho De 229
as Ho Hán-thu’o’ng 229
- Lê Lo’i 犇利 231, 282, 290–1
as Annam, king of 231, 290
- Lê Quí-ly 黎季犖 229–30, 248
- Lê Trú’ng 黎澄 248
- lead, and immortality drugs 273,
480
- Learning of the emperors* (*Ti hsüeh*)
218
- learning of the mind-and-heart
(*hsin-hsüeh*) 219
- Legalism 535, 758
- legitimation
by Chang Shih-ch’eng 31, 33–34
of Chu Hou-ts’ung 440–50
of Chu Hou-ts’ung’s birth
parents 457–61
by Chu Ti 193–6, 204, 214–18,
238
by Chu Yüan-chang 48–57, 107–
20
for Northern Red Turban Sung
state 42–3
of rebels 14, 30–2, 60
- in the Southern Ming 672, 688,
712
- Lei-chou 雷州 679, 704
- Lei Li 雷禮 763
- lei-shu* 類書 (encyclopedias) 769,
774
- Lekdehun 勒克德渾 661
- Leng-k’ou 冷口 617
- Lenin 815
- Leopard Quarter (*pao fang*) 470 n4,
437 n7
- leopards in tribute trade 235, 261,
268, 301
- letters (*shu*) [type of writing] 728,
796, 804
- leveling grain surcharge (*p’ing-mi*
fa) 297; *see also* grain tax
- Lhasa 417; 224 map9
- li* 里 (distance unit) xxi, 310, 401
- li* 里 (local district) 179, 180
- Li 李, consort, *see* Chu Ch’ang-lo,
consorts of
- Li 李, consort (d. 1614), *see* Chu
Tsai-hou, consorts of
- Li, “Sesame Seed” 芝麻李 43, 46
- Li 李, surname 20
- Li Ch’ah-an 李察安, *see* Chaghan
Temür
- Li Chen 李震 380–1, 382, 387
- Li Ch’eng-liang 李成梁 520, 523,
575
- Li Ch’eng-tung 李成棟 679–81,
683, 684–8, 690, 691
- li-chia* 里甲 (village communal
group) 180
- Li Chih 李質 546, 551–2, 552 n17,
730, 732–3, 758–9, 763
- Li Chih-hsin 奉赤心 690, 690
n44
as Li Chin 690 n44
as Li Kuo 690 n44, 714
- Li Chin 李錦, *see* Li Ch’ih-hsin
- Li Chin-hua 李晉華 794
- Li Ching-lung 李景隆 (son of Li

- Li Ching-lung (*cont.*)
 Wen-chung) 196–8, 199, 200–
 1, 278
- Li Ch'un-fang 李春芳 519–20
li fa 禮法 (rites and laws) 55
- Li Fu-ta 李福達 453–7
 as Chang Yin 453
 historical sources for 800–1
 as Li Wu 453, 454
- Li Hsien 李賢 260, 341, 346, 360,
 379, 766, 796
- Li Hua-lung 李化龍 565
- Li Ju-po 李如柏 582–3
 and offensive against Nurhaci 578
 map25
- Li Ju-sung 李如松 557, 567, 568
- Li Kuang 李廣 356, 428
- Li Kuang-t'ao 李光濤 806
- Li Kuo 李過, *see* Li Ch'ih-hsin
- Li Meng-yang 李夢陽 354–5
- Li people 黎族 382
- Li Pin 李彬 231
- Li Po-sheng 李伯昇 64, 80, 92
- Li pu chih kao* 禮部志稿 (Draft monograph of the Ministry of Rites) 755
- Li San-ts'ai 李三才 531–2, 534, 535,
 541–3, 545
- Li Shan-ch'ang 李善長 47, 48, 50,
 55, 75–6, 109
 as Chu Piao's teacher 111, 112
 ennobled 107, 124
 and Hu Wei-yung 138, 141,
 162–3
- Li Shih 李實 329–30, 332
- Li-Shih 離石 115
- Li Shih-chen 李時珍 776–7
- Li Shih-lu 李仕魯 146–7
- Li Shih-mien 李時勉 241, 275, 283
- Li Ssu-ch'i 李思齊 20, 33, 67, 94,
 117; 19 map22
- Li Su-ying 李素英 792
- Li Ta 李達 213, 260
- Li tai ming ch'en tsou i*
- 歷代名臣奏議 729, 734
- Li T'an 李璫 59
- Li Ting-kuo 李定國 702–10
 and 151–55 campaigns 696
 map30
- Li T'ing-chi 李廷機 529, 549
- Li Tung-yang 李東陽 404, 406, 415
- Li Tzu-ch'eng 李自成
 accession of 638–9
 campaigns of 1626, 633 map27
 rebellion of 9, 365, 622–3, 630–
 1, 635–40
 relationship with Wu San-kuei
 and Dorgon 639 n166
 remnant army of 648, 651, 655–
 8, 681–3, 683 n39, 684, 686,
 690, 690 n44
 as Shun, emperor of 639
 as Shun, Prince of 638
 and Shun reign 637–40
- Li Tzu-hsing 李孜省 351
- Li Tz'u-ming 李慈銘 813
- Li Wen-chung 李文忠 (adopted nephew of Chu Yüan-chang)
 80, 92, 93, 99–100, 102, 103,
 113, 119–20, 124, 127–9, 138–
 9, 149–50, 196
- Li Wu 李午, *see* Li Fu-ta
- Li Yao 李瑤 811 n24
- Li Yung-ch'ang 李永昌 326
- liang* 兩 (tael, weight unit) xxi
- Liang, Prince of 梁王, *see* Basalawarmi
- liang-chang* 犧長 (tax captains) 153
- Liang ch'ao ts'ung hsin lu*
 兩朝從信錄 758
- Liang-Che 兩浙 109
- Liang Che hai fang lei k'ao*
 兩浙海防類考 774
- Liang Che hai fang lei k'ao hsü pien*
 兩浙海防類考續編 774
- Liang Ch'i-ch'ao 梁啓超 813
- Liang Ch'u 梁譜 417, 418, 420
- Liang Fang 梁芳 350, 362

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

925

- Liang-hsiang 良鄉 443
 Liang-Huai 兩淮 109, 486
 saltfields of 30
 Liang-Kwang 兩廣
 revenues from 645, 671
 provincial government of 676,
 677
 Ch'ing conquest of 679–81, 685,
 690
 and the Yung-li court 696
 see also Kwangsi; Kwangtung
liang-li 良吏 (upright or good
 functionaries) 762
 Liang Meng-lung 梁夢龍 523
 Liang Ts'ai 梁材 485
 Liao, Prince of 遼王, *see* Ajashiri
 Liao, Prince of 遼王, *see* Chu Chih
 Liao 廖, surname 69
 Liao-ch'eng 聊城 112
 Liao 遼 dynasty 397
 comparison with Ming military
 colonies 104
 historical sources for 772
 Liao River 遼河 574, 600, 601, 611;
 225 map10
 Liao-tung 遼東 25, 102, 130, 167,
 249, 251, 265, 398, 400, 679
 Chinese troops in 600
 Esen's 1449 attack on 322
 garrison at 469–70, 474
 generals in 576, 577, 606, 607, 617
 governor of 520, 542, 575
 historical sources for 772, 806
 Jurchen settlements in 267
 migration of Mongols into 557
 Ming troops recalled from 327
 Mongol raids in 477
 officials to 292–3, 332, 523
 ports in 573
 refugees from 604
 1618 military crisis in 590–1
 1618–21 Manchu conquest of
 601, 602
 storehouses in 480
 and taxation 409
 390 map19
Liao-tung chih 遼東志 772
Liao-tung tu-ssu 遼東都司 (Liao-
 tung Regional Military
 Commission) 392
 Liao-yang 遼陽 580, 600; 19 map2,
 578 map25
 Liao Yung-an 廖永安 47
 Liao Yung-chung 廖永忠 85, 97,
 101, 112, 127, 128–9, 168
 Liaoning 遼寧 157, 170, 392
lieh-chuan 列傳 (biographies) 727,
 760
lien-tso 連坐 (collective
 responsibility) 157
 Lien Tzu-ning 練子寧 150, 151
 lightning
 and the death of Chu Kao-chih
 283
 and a flagpole at the Altar of
 Heaven 541
 Lima, Peru 587
 Limahong, *see* Lin Feng
 Lin A-feng 林阿鳳, *see* Lin Feng
 Lin-ch'ing 臨清 113, 432; 197
 map8, 253 map14, 431 map22
 Lin-ch'u'an 臨川 79
 Lin Feng 林鳳 560–2, 561 n25
 as Dim Mhon 560
 as Limahong 560
 as Lin A-feng 560
 Lin-hai 臨海 124
 Lin-hao 臨濠 118
 Lin-hsi 林西 157
 Lin Hsien 林賢 155
 Lin-huai 臨淮 161, 173, 657
 Lin-t'ao 臨洮 117; 633 map27
ling 令 (articles of commands,
 statutes) 134, 789
ling chih 靈芝 (magical plants)
 481–2
 Ling-pi 靈璧 200; 197 map8
 Ling River 靈江 719

926

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Ling-yüan 淩源 157
 Ling Yün-i 淩雲翼 523
 Lingayen Bay 560
 lions 235, 261, 263
 Lisbon 433
 literacy 1, 726, 727, 809; *see also*
 printing and publishing
 literati 35, 534, 544–7
 acceptance of Mongol rule 16–18,
 61–2
 biographies of 733, 763
 Chinese, in service of the Yüan
 15–18, 64
 and Ming loyalists 670
 participation in uprisings 27–8,
 33, 35, 42, 47, 48, 56, 67, 82,
 88, 93–4, 98, 112
 see also officials
 literati-officials, *see* literati; officials
 literature 184, 546, 588, 673, 734,
 735, 760–3, 764, 768, 775, 778,
 790
 see also drama; fiction; poetry
 Little Kings (*hsiao wang-tzu*) 391,
 391 n19, 398–9, 400
 Liu, her ladyship 劉娘娘, *see* Chu
 Hou-chao, consorts of
 Liu 劉, palace lady, *see* Chu
 Ch'ang-lo, consorts of
 Liu, Thousand-catty 千斤劉, *see*
 Liu T'ung
 Liu Chen 劉禎 42
 Liu Ch'eng-yin 劉承胤 682–3
 Liu Chi 劉基 (1311–75) 51, 54–5,
 82, 84, 112, 362
 Liu Chi 劉吉 (d. 1493) 362
 Liu-chia kang 劉家港 233; 234
 map 11
 Liu Chin 劉瑾 349, 405–12, 414,
 424, 451 n12, 596, 799–800
 Liu ch'ing jih cha 留青日札 766
 Liu-ch'iü 琉球, *see* Ryūkyū
 liu chün-tzu 六君子 (Six Men of
 Superior Virtue) 608
 Liu Fu-t'ung 劉福通 40, 42–3, 51,
 67–8, 82
 Liu Hsiang-k'o 劉湘客 687, 691
 Liu Hsiao-tsu 劉效祖 772
 Liu I-ching 劉一楨 594, 598
 Liu Jo-yü 劉若愚 514, 752, 765
 Liu Kuan 劉觀 211, 239, 291
 liu kuan 流官 (regularly appointed
 civil service officials) 383
 Liu K'ung-chao 劉孔昭 646, 649
 Liu Liang-tso 劉良佐 645, 660
 “Liu min shuo” 流民說 (Discussion
 on refugees) 388
 Liu Pei 劉備 101
 Liu pu chih chang 六部職掌 (Rules
 for six ministries) 131
 Liu San-wu 劉三五 164, 178–9
 Liu Sheng 柳升 206, 290
 Liu Shih-p'ei 劉師培 813
 Liu Ta-hsia 劉大夏 356–7, 372
 Liu Tao-lung 劉道隆 536
 Liu Ting-chih 劉定之 362
 Liu T'ing 劉廷 557, 580–3
 and 1619 campaign against
 Nurhaci 578 map 25
 Liu Tse-ch'ing 劉澤清 645, 649
 Liu Tsung-chou 劉宗周 599, 620,
 647–8
 Liu Tsung-tai 劉宗岱 774
 liu-ta 留都 (residual capital), *see*
 Nanking
 Liu Tung-yang 劉東陽 566–7
 Liu T'ung 劉通 386–7
 and the Ching-Hsiang rebellion
 384–7
 as Han, Prince of 386
 as Liu, Thousand-catty 386
 successor to 387
 and the Te-sheng reign 386
 Liu Wei 劉惟 259
 Liu Ya-tzu 劉亞子 814
 Liu Yao-hui 劉堯晦 561 n25
 Liu Yung-ch'eng 劉永誠 332, 333,
 374

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

927

- liu yü* 六諭 (Six instructions) 179–81
 Liu Yün 劉允 418
 livestock, and Mongol border raids 223
 Lo-an 樂安 112, 288
 Lo Hsiang-lin 羅香林 795
 Lo Hung-hsien 羅洪先 775
 Lo-mu 羅木 garrison 28
 Lo River 潘水 125; 126 map6
 Lo-shan 羅山 district 20
 Lo T'ung 羅通 328
 Lo-yang [Loyang] 洛陽 97, 149, 631, 656, 657; 633 map27
 local commander (*ts'an-chiang*) 249
 local defense 26–9, 61, 67, 72, 79–80, 312–14, 316
 local elite 26, 62
 local government 2–4, 24, 132, 180, 203, 661–3, 715, 731, 769, 777–81, 792, 804
 see also provincial government
 local government
 in early Ming 104, 138, 153–4, 169, 179–81
 in the Hsüan-te reign 291, 292–3, 295–8
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 314
 in the Cheng-te reign 424–36
 in the Chia-ching reign 452, 469, 470–1, 487, 499–510
 in the Wan-li reign 520, 528, 530–2, 535, 539, 540, 545, 556, 559
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 626, 636
 in the Southern Ming 662–3, 671, 702
 local histories, *see* gazetteers
 local troops (*t'u-ping*) 374
 locusts 310, 632
 logging 288, 465, 565, 711
 Lolo people 羅羅族 157, 160, 381, 602
 London 585, 587
 Longobardi, Nicolo' 563
 looms, historical sources on 777
 Lord-on-high, *see* Shang-ti
 Loto 洛託 707, 722
 loyalty 26–7, 29
 Chu Yüan-chang's respect for 50 to Ming cause, *see* resistance;
 Southern Ming
 Lu, Prince of 魯王, *see* Chu I-hai
 Lu, Prince of 魯王, *see* Chu T'an
 Lu, Prince of 魯王 (sixteenth century) 425
 Lu, regent 魯監國, *see* Chu I-hai
lu-ch'in 錄囚 (annual review of prisoners) 367–8
 Lu-chou 嘉州, Anhwei 56, 65, 69
 and Chang Hsien-chung 634
 Ming siege and conquest of 82, 84, 89
 Lu-chou 濟州 (on Szechwan–Kweichow border) 381, 382
 Lu-ch'ua 築川 146, 160, 314–16, 331, 333
 Lu Hsiang-sheng 盧象昇 622, 629
 Lu Kao 達果 341
 Lu-lung 嘉龍 617
 Lu-lung Hill 嘉龍山 76–7
 as Lion's Hill 76
 as Shih-tzu Hill 76; 75 map3
 Lu-lung 嘉龍 Pass 772
Lu-lung sai lüeh 嘉龍塞略 772
 Lu Ping 陸炳 464, 483–4, 506
 Lu Shan-chi 鹿善繼 514
 Lu-shih 嘉氏 621
 Lu Ts'an 陸粲 732 n15, 766
 Lu Wan 陸完 424–5, 436
luan 亂 (chaos) 175
 Luan-ch'eng 漣城 39
 Luh, Prince of 潞王, *see* Chu Ch'ang-fang
 lumber, *see* logging
lun 論 (discourses, discussions) 122, 728
 Lung-an 龍安 125

- Lung-chiang 龍江 shipyard 232
 and Chu Yüan-chang 118, 124, 144
- Lung-ch'ing 隆慶 reign, *see* Chu Tsai-hou
- Lung-chou 龍州 125; 126 map6
- Lung fei chi lüeh* 龍飛紀略 759
- Lung-feng 龍鳳 reign 42, 51
- Lung-hsi 隴西, Shensi 117
- Lung-hsi 龍溪 district, Fukien 26
- Lung-hsing 龍興 61
- Lung-hu Mountain 龍虎山 120
- Lung-t'an 龍潭 200
- Lung-wan 龍灣 75–7, 78, 80
- Lung Wen-pin 龍文彬 780
- Lung-wu 隆武 reign, *see* Chu Yü-chien
- luxury goods 546, 588; *see also* gold; ivory; silver
- Luzon 呂宋 560–1, 561 n25, 711, 724
- lü* 律 (law code, articles of statutes) 122, 134, 175
- Lü 吕, (dowager empress) (mother of Chu Yün-wen and secondary consort of Chu Piao), *see* Chu Piao, consorts of
- Lü Chen 呂珍 64, 82, 92, 211
- Lü ling chih chieh* 律令直解 (Straightforward commentary on the statutes and commands) 134
- Lü Liu-liang 呂留良 811
- Lü-shun 旅順 (Port Arthur) 618
- Lü Yüan 呂原 341
- Ma 馬, empress (d. 1382), *see* Chu Yüan-chang, consorts of
- Ma 馬, empress (d. 1402), *see* Chu Yün-wen, consorts of
- Ma Ang 馬昂 341
- Ma Chi-hsiang 馬吉翔 683, 687–8
- Ma Ch'i 馬騫 231
- Ma Huan 馬歡 773, 792
- Ma Lin 馬林 580–3
 and 1619 campaign against Nurhaci 578 map25
- Ma Shao-yü 馬紹愈 652
- Ma Shih-ying 馬士英 642, 644, 646–50, 654, 657–8
- Ma Shun 馬順 307
- Ma-tsu 馬祖 Island 695 n49; 696 map30
- Ma Tuan-lin 馬端臨 769
- Ma Wen-sheng 馬文升 372, 374, 375, 395, 399, 771
- Ma Yü 馬愈 308
- Mac 莫 clan 558
- Macao 奧門(濠鏡) 556, 559–60, 562, 692
 merchants from 631
 1622 Dutch attack on 603
 and trade 615
- Mad Monk, *see* Ta-pei
- Madrid 589
- magical plants (*ling chih*) 481–2
- Mahmûd 馬合木 226–7, 264, 266
- Maidiribala 買的里八刺 100, 102, 103, 120, 123, 129, 139
- Maila, J. A. M. de Moyriac de 759
- Maitreya 彌勒佛, *see* Buddhism
- Majartai 馬札兒臺 16
- Malabar 233
- Malacca 7, 233, 235, 433, 770; 234 map11
see also foreign relations, with Malacca
- malaria 708
- Malaya 433
- Maldives 235; 234 map11
- Malindi 马林地 235; 234 map11
- Man-chün 滿俊, *see* Man-ssu
- Man Kuei 滿桂 616
- Man 蟹 people 109
- Man-ssu 滿四 399
 as Man-chün 399

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

929

- Manchu people 滿族 557–8, 574–84
 conquest of the Ming by 598, 601–11, 616–21, 636–40, 649, 650–3, 654, 660–3, 669, 675, 679, 682–4, 690–1, 700–1, 807, 812–15
 and dynasty building 574–83, 617, 660–2
 and southern pacification campaign (1644–1664) 659
 map28; autumn 1644 in Shantung 652–3, 655; November 1644–45 in Sian and Nanking 656–63; 1646 in Chekiang and Fukien 675–6; 1647–48 in southern Hu-kuang and Liang-Kuang 678–86, 690–2, 703–5; 1650 in Chekiang and Fukien 698–9; 1651 in Kwangsi 705; 1658 in Kewichow, Yunnan, Szechwan 701, 706–8; 1661 in Burma 709–10; 1664 in Fukien 711, 725
see also foreign relations, with the Manchus
- Manchuria 43, 67, 98, 102, 117, 222, 248, 266, 321, 389, 392, 397, 557, 570, 572, 574–84
- Mandate of Heaven, *see* Heaven, Mandate of
- Manicheism (*Ming-chiao*) 18, 43, 44, 51, 108, 122; *see also* religion
- Manila 560–2
 and trade 587, 604
 1640 Sino-Spanish uprisings in 627
- Mansūr 滿速兒 395 n22, 452–3, 455, 456, 467
- Manuel I (king of Portugal) 433
- manufacturing 530–1
- Manzi Kharajang 蠻子哈刺章 103
- Manzi Khaya 蠻子海牙 70
- Mao Ch'eng 毛澄 447, 450
- Mao Chi 毛紀 448
- Mao Ch'i-ling 毛奇齡 799
- Mao Kuei 毛貴 43; 19 map2
- Mao K'un 茅坤 801
- Mao Lake 漞湖 662
- Mao-lien 毛憐 Jurchen tribe 266
- Mao Mountain 茅山 26
- Mao P'ei-ch'i 毛佩琦 794
- Mao Tse-tung 毛澤東 815
- Mao Wen-lung 毛文龍 601
- Mao Yüan-i 茅元儀 771
- maps, *see* xiv–xv for a list of maps in this volume
 sources for 771, 774, 775, 775–6, 778
- Mar-Körgis 驄兒可兒吉斯 400
- maritime activity
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 710–25
 and Cheng Ho's voyages 232–6, 270–2, 275, 280, 791
 and foreign relations 269–72, 301–3, 433–4, 558–63, 587–90, 614–15
 founder's ban on 168–9
 and grain transport 36–7, 64, 251–2
 historical sources for 772–3, 792, 794
 and Korean campaigns 567–74
 in late Yüan and early Ming 96–7
 and piracy and trade 256, 490–510
 and Southern Ming regimes 695–705
see also Chekiang; foreign relations; foreign trade; Fukien; Kwangtung; navy; piracy; pirates; shipbuilding
- Maritime Trade Intendancies (*Shih-po ssu*) 169, 269–70, 492
- marquis (*bou*) 105, 742
- marriage alliances 161, 162–3, 193,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

930

GLOSSARY – INDEX

- marriage alliances (*cont.*)
 317, 322, 325, 326, 471, 571,
 574, 575
 martial law, 1621, in Peking 600
 Marx 815
 mathematics, historical sources on
 221
 mausoleum 607; *see also* imperial
 mausolea
 Mecca 默伽 302
 medicine 221, 350, 593, 597
 historical sources on 776–7
 and physicians 176, 464, 593, 597
 in tribute trade 268, 471, 700
see also drugs
 Mei Pass 梅關 686, 690–1
 Mei Ssu-tsu 梅思祖 93
 Mekong River 瀾滄江 775; 234
 map 11
 memorial tablets (*shen-tao pei*)
 [type of writing] 732, 761
 memorials *see also* rescripts
 in the Hung-wu reign 180
 in the Hung-hsi reign 279–80,
 286
 in the Hsüan-te reign 286–7,
 291–2, 295
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 328,
 358–9, 369–70
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 358–9,
 369–70, 383–4, 388, 401
 in the Hung-chih reign 353, 354,
 375, 745
 in the Cheng-te reign 423
 in the Chia-ching reign 446, 448,
 484, 492, 498, 507, 745
 in the Wan-li reign 517, 519, 533,
 537, 543, 547 n11, 553–4, 584,
 590, 737–40, 749
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 597, 598,
 599, 606, 607, 609, 610
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 612–13,
 628
 in the Southern Ming 808; in the
 Hung-kuang reign 647, 654; in
 the Yung-li reign 689, 691
 in the Ch'ing 809
 memorials (*tsou-i*) [document type]
 collections of 727, 728, 729, 732,
 734, 755, 767–8, 771, 778, 796,
 808
 excerpts from, in biographies 762,
 765
 included in veritable records 739,
 747, 748, 767
 review of (*t'iao-chih*) 287
 memorials, official (*t'i-pen*) 767
 memorials, personal (*tsou-pen*,
 variously *tsou-shu* or *tsou-i*)
 767
 memorials of the grand secretariat
 (*t'i-kao*) 738, 739
 Men Ta 門達 361
 Mencius (Meng-tzu) 122, 173, 534,
 547 n11; *see also* Confucius;
 neo-Confucianism
 Mendoza, Juan González de 803
 Meng Cheng-fa 蒙正發 687, 691
 Meng Sen 孟森 793, 798
Meng-tzu 孟子, *see* Mencius
 Meng-yang 孟養, *see* Mohnyin
 merchant associations (*hui-kuan*)
 588
 merchants 1, 8, 183, 588, 639, 663,
 671; *see also* foreign trade;
 trade
 mercury and immortality drugs 343
 Meridian Gate (Wu Gate), of the
 imperial palace 137; 243 map 13
 merit
 recruitment by 3; *see also*
 examinations
 and military reward 206–7,
 375–6
 merit ratings, standards for 131,
 365, 376; *see also* official rank
 Merkid 瑪兒吉鰐 people 59
 metal as basic element 403 n1
 “metal chest and stone building”
 740, 745

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

931

- see also* Imperial Historical Archives
- metals, precious
hoarded 546
from Japan 700
mining of 561
in tribute trade 261, 471
- metropolitan degree holder (*chin-shih*) 537
- Metropolitan gazette (Ti-pao, T'ang-pao)* 734–5
- Mexico 587, 589
- Mi-lu 米魯 381
- Mi-shu chien* 密書監 (Imperial Library) 741
- Mi-yün 密雲 421; 419 map20
- Miami 585
- Miao Ch'ang-ch'i 繆昌期 606–7
- Miao Chung 苗衷 308
- Miao-hsing Temple 妙行寺 28
- Miao 苗 people 387
1361–62 rebellion of 80, 81
1450s uprising of 336
1464 uprising of 377, 380, 381
1470s uprising of 382–4
and 1590–1600 Po-chou campaign 564–5
1620s uprising of 602–3
- middleman method (*k'ai-chung fa*)
and salt and grain transport 250–1
- Mien-ch'ih 滇池 621
- Mien-chou 綿州 125; 126 map6
- Mien 𠂊 region 109
- Mien-tien 緬甸, *see* Burma
- Mien-yang 洋陽 65
- military affairs 770; *see also* weapons
border troops in Peking 413–15, 434–8, 442, 475–9
campaigns in the early Ming 112–20, 125–30, 139, 143–6; 145 map7
in the early Ch'ing: Chapter 11 historical sources for 735, 737,
- 771–3, 786–7, 792–3, 802, 806, 808
- Koreans in Ming armies 577, 579, 580
- in the late Yüan 11, 13–15, 25, Chapter 2
- Ming defections and surrenders to Manchu service 617–18, 648–9, 652, 655–6, 657, 658–60, 661, 676, 679, 680, 681, 683, 684ff, 688, 690, 692, 694, 698, 700, 706, 711, 716, 718, 719, 751
- Mongol troops in Ming armies 196, 206–7, 213, 222–6, 248, 316, 317, 374, 379, 382, 453, 468, 566, 600
- organization of the Ming military system 90–2, 104–6, 124, 244–56, 293–4, 327–8, 333, 334, 336, 370–6
- rise of popular leaders in early Ming 15
- strategy in late Yüan 73–7, 82–8, 92–7, 771
- training 244, 247–8, 291, 320, 321, 373–6, 476, 503
- troops strength 68, 70, 71, 74, 77, 83, 84, 89, 93, 94, 97, 100, 102, 128, 144, 158, 159, 191, 196, 198, 226, 227, 230, 231, 244–8, 246 n105, 282, 289, 299, 320–2, 322–30, 334, 344 n2, 373–4, 379, 380, 381, 386–7, 394, 413, 415–16, 420, 451, 452, 475, 476, 503, 557, 565, 567–74, 576–9, 645, 656, 660, 671, 674–5, 660, 669, 674, 714, 718, 720, 722–3
- and weapons, *see* weapons
- Yüan government troops 20, 21, 24, 26, 28, 31, 45, 60, 61–3, 67, 69–70, 72, 80, 82–3, 94–6, 97, 99–102
- see also* garrisons; Capital

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

932

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- military affairs (*cont.*)
 Guards; Imperial Bodyguard
 foreign relations with the
 Manchus foreign relations with
 the Mongols
- military affairs 7–9
 in the founding of the Ming:
 Chapters 1 and 2
 in the Hung-wu reign 112–20,
 125–31, 139, 144–6, 160–3,
 168–9, 169–78, 375, 383, 397,
 399
 in the Chien-wen reign 193–202
 in the Yung-lo reign 206–9, 212–
 14, 221–37, 244–9, 266–8,
 358, 375, 383, 793
 in the Hung-hsi reign, 276, 792–3
 in the Hsüan-te reign 284–5,
 288–9, 293–4, 299–300, 792–3
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 309–12,
 312–16, 316–31, 383
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 333, 336,
 338–9, 383
 in the T'ien-shun reign 383
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 370–402
 in the Hung-chih reign 370–402
 in the Cheng-te reign 407–9,
 409–12, 413–16, 418–23, 423–
 30, 434–6, 439
 in the Chia-ching reign 442, 450–
 3, 466–79, 486–9, 490–505
 in the Wan-li reign 520, 525, 527,
 542, 544, 557–84, 588, 590
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 598, 599–
 603, 604–5, 606, 610–11
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 613,
 615–37
 in the Southern Ming 641–75; in
 the Hung-kuang reign 641–
 660, 681; in the Lung-wu reign
 669–76, 683 n39, 699; in the
 Lu regency 666, 669–70, 674–
 6, 693–701; in the Shao-wu
 reign 678–9; in the Yung-li
- reign 676–92, 701–10
 military colonies, military farms
 (*chün-t'un, t'un-t'ien*) 104–5,
 170, 171, 183, 207, 250, 275,
 291, 294, 320, 409, 410, 451
 n12, 525
 historical sources on 788, 802
 military commissioner (*tu-ssu*) 393
 military examinations (*wu-chü*) 375
 military farms (*chün-t'un*), *see*
 military colonies
 military rosters 291, 293–4, 475,
 488, 583
 military service 183, 293–4; *see also*
 hereditary military nobles;
 nobility of merit
 military writers (*ping-chia*) [book
 classification category] 728
 Min, Prince of 岷王, *see* Chu P'ien
 Min-an 閩安 718, 719
min-chuang 民壯 (people's stalwarts
 [of volunteer troops]) 374–5
 “Min ōchō seiritsu ki no kiseki –
 Kōbuchō gigoku jiken to keishi
 mondai o megutte 明王朝成立期
 の軌跡 – 洪武朝の疑獄事件と京
 師問題をめぐて” 789
 Min 閩 region 109
 Min River 閩江, Fukien 97, 718;
 659 map28
Min shu 閩書 780
Min wang 閩王 (Fukien, king of),
see Teng Mao-ch'i
min-yün 民運 (civilian transport)
 254
 Mind, School of 551; *see also* Wang
 Shou-jen
Ming ch'ao chi shih pen mo
 明朝紀事本末, *see* *Ming shih
 chi shih pen mo*
Ming ch'ao k'ai kuo wen hsien
 明朝開國文獻 789
Ming ch'en yen hsing lu 名臣言行錄
 763

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

933

- Ming chi* 明紀 782
Ming chi liu k'ou shih mo 明季流寇始末 806
Ming chi shih liao t'i pa 明季史料題跋 814
Ming-chiao 明教 (Manicheanism) 122
Ming-ch'ing 明清 Temple 28
Ming Ch'ing chih chi tang she yün tung k'ao 明清之際黨社運動考 805
Ming Ch'ing shih liao 明清史料 808
Ming Ch'ing shih lun chi 明清史論集 806
Ming Ch'ing shih yen chiu ts'ung kao 明清史研究叢稿 788
 797
Ming-chou 明州 140, 155
Ming 明 dynasty
 establishment of 96
 fall of 637–8
 hope for restoration of: Chapter 11
 major discussion of: Volumes VII and VIII
Ming Eastern Capital and Cheng Ch'eng-kung in Taiwan 723
Ming-Han war of 1360–63: 71,
 72–92
Ming hui yao 明會要 782
Ming ju hsüeh an 明儒學案 733
Ming lun ta tien 明倫大典 753
Ming ming ch'en yen hsing lu 明名臣言行錄 763
Ming mo Ch'ing ch'u ti hsüeh feng 明末清初的學風 805
Ming pen chi chiao chu 明本紀校注 789
Ming shan ts'ang 名山藏 757
Ming Sheng 明昇 42, 101, 108, 125,
 127
Ming shih 明史 (Official history of the Ming) 202, 354, 364, 368,
 398, 439, 508, 536, 750, 752,
 758, 760, 781–2, 784, 789, 790,
 798, 810–11
Ming shih chi shih pen mo 明史紀事本末 760, 786–7, 790
Ming shih kao 明史稿 (draft Ming history) 202, 758, 781
Ming shih k'ao cheng 明史考證 786,
 799
Ming shih lu 明實錄 (Veritable records of the Ming dynasty)
 742 n55, 743, 746, 751, 752, 770
 n131, 798
Ming shih lun chi 明史論集 797
Ming shih ou pi 明史偶筆 797
Ming shih yen chiu chuan k'an 明史研究專刊 806
Ming shu 明書 757
Ming ta cheng tsuan yao 明大政纂要 759
Ming tai huang ts'e chih tu 明代黃冊制度 788
Ming tai shih 明代史 793, 798
 “*Ming tai ti shang t'un chih tu*” 明代的商屯制度商” 788
Ming T'ai-ts'u 明太祖, *see Chu Yüan-chang*
Ming t'ung chien 明通鑑 782, 784,
 790, 798, 799
 “*Ming Wu-tsung san hsing Hsüan-fu Ta-t'ung chi*” 明武宗三行宦府大同記” 800
Ming Yü-chen 明玉珍 27, 38, 41–2,
 65, 66, 72, 88, 100–1, 115, 125,
 127; 19 map2
mining 8, 336, 530–2, 545, 547, 561,
 641, 650, 777
ministries (pu) 152, 187, 188, 209,
 210–12, 731, 740
 historical sources for 797
see also Ministry of Justice;
 Ministry of Personnel;
 Ministry of Revenue; Ministry of Rites; Ministry of War;

934

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- ministries (*pū*) (cont.)
 Ministry of Works
- ministries and ministers 742
 in the early Ming 152, 187, 188,
 209, 210–12, 366; 110 map4
 in the Yung-lo reign 238, 242–4,
 643
 in the Hung-hsi reign 279–80,
 793
 in the Hsüan-te reign 286–8,
 291–8, 303–4, 793
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 307–8,
 325–31
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 331–9
 in the T'ien-shun reign 340–2
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 346–50
 in the Cheng-te reign 405
 in the Chia-ching reign 333, 483,
 484–7, 489
 in the Lung-ch'ing reign 513–14
 in the Wan-li reign 333, 519–20,
 522–56, 539–40, 548, 555, 570
 in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 593–5
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 599, 601,
 605, 609
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 619,
 620, 628
 in the Shun interregnum 638
 in the Southern Ming: in the
 Hung-kuang reign 641, 643,
 646, 648, 650, 652, 665; in the
 Lung-wu reign 667, 669; in the
 Lu regency 667, 695, 720; in
 the Yung-li reign 677, 678,
 687–9, 720
- Ministry of Justice 151, 188, 211,
 242, 367, 412, 549, 554–5, 597,
 243 map13
 historical sources on 755–6, 799
- Ministry of Personnel 4, 148, 332,
 349, 358, 523, 527, 530, 533–
 40, 542 n10, 553, 743; 243
 map13
- Ministry of Revenue 123, 188, 242,
 281, 296, 354, 358, 382, 404–5,
- 420, 478, 525, 535, 637, 645,
 667, 669; 243 map13
 historical sources on 755–6
- Ministry of Rites 211, 242, 356, 396,
 434, 443, 446, 448, 457, 468,
 484, 599, 689, 770; 243 map13
 historical sources on 733, 755
- Ministry of War 242, 293, 376, 396,
 422, 424, 471, 472, 476, 490,
 520, 562, 594, 649, 667, 770,
 771; 243 map13
 historical sources on 796
- Ministry of Works 133, 163, 242,
 281, 293, 296, 348, 416, 478,
 597, 607, 667; 243 map13
- minority peoples 8, 238, 251, 336,
 524, 610
 aborigines 89, 377–89, 497, 499,
 563–5, 589, 675, 702–5
 Chuang 377, 380
 in Kwangtung 520
 in Kweichow 773
 Li 382
 Lolo 146, 157, 160, 381, 602
 Miao 80, 336, 377, 380, 381, 382–
 4, 387, 564–5, 602–3
 Shan 146, 157, 160, 314–16
 Shan-tu-chang 381
 in Southwestern China 8, 106,
 107, 375, 426, 563–5, 602–3
 Tibeto-Burman 143–6, 389, 557–
 8, 589, 709
 Uighurs 257, 389, 393–5, 557
 Yao 336, 347, 349, 377–80
 in Yunnan 702–5, 708, 773
- mint 239, 650; *see also* coins; copper
 coins; monetary system;
 money economy; metals,
 precious
- miscellaneous histories, *see*
 histories, miscellaneous
- miscellaneous schools (*tsa-chia*)
 [book classification category]
 728, 763
- missionaries 560, 562–3, 692; *see*

GLOSSARY – INDEX

935

- also* Catholicism; Christianity;
Jesuits
 Mo-ning 摩寧, *see* Mohnyin
 Mo-p'an Mountains 磨盤山 707–8
 moats of Peking 239
 Mogadishu 木骨都束 235, 236; 234
 map 111
 Moghulistan 393, 467
 Mohnyin (Meng-yang, Mo-ning)
 314
 monetary system 589–90; *see also*
 copper coins; gold; paper
 money; silver
 money economy 297, 586–90; *see*
 also monetary system
 moneylenders, *see* pawn shops
 “Mongol Atlas,” a Yüan dynasty
 map 775
 Mongolia 蒙古 96, 98, 320, 391,
 397, 466–70, 760
 1368 Ming expedition to 114
 see also foreign relations, with the
 Mongols; Mongols
 Mongols 57, 98, 99, 100, 102–3,
 113, 193, 371, 389–402, 403,
 420–2, 466–79, 484, 524, 557–
 8, 566–7, 574–84, 749
 Eastern (Tartars) 129–30, 166–7,
 223–9, 264–6, 282, 298–300,
 316ff, 322, 389–402, 421, 466–
 79, 520, 557, 566–7
 historical sources on 785, 789,
 791
 signification of 58, 317–18
 224 map 9, 225 map 10
 Western (Oirat) 223–9, 264–6,
 294, 298–300, 316ff, 322–31,
 337, 389–402, 466–79
 Mongols, Prince of the, *see* Esen
 monographs (*chih*) [section of
 official histories] 727, 757, 758,
 760, 772
 monopolies 183
 salt 30–1, 357, 404, 407, 650, 671
 Mori Masao 森正夫 806
mou (mu) 犁 xxi, 123
 and allotment for garrison
 soldiers 469
 and Hsü Chieh’s estate 521
 long “mou” defined 527–8
 and taxation 190, 191
 mountains, historical sources on
 779
 mourning 283, 351, 361, 447, 463,
 526–8, 532, 537, 550, 611, 628
 Mthong-ba-ldon-ldan 263
mu 犁, *see* *mou*
 Mu 沐 clan 702–3
mu-chih ming 墓誌銘 (epitaphs) 761
mu-lu hsueh 目錄學 (bibliography
 [as a discipline]) 735
 Mu-na 母納 Mountain 299
 Mu-pang 木邦 (Hsenwi) 315, 710
mu-piao 墓表 (epitaphs) 761
 Mu Sheng 沐升 230–1, 315
 Mu T’ien-po 沐天波 702–3, 707
 as Ch’ien-kuo, duke of 702
 Mu Ying 沐英 (adopted son of Chu
 Yüan-chang) 130, 139, 144–6,
 157, 160, 161, 702
 Mukden, *see* Shen-yang
 music 404, 405, 422, 439, 737, 744
 musical instruments in tribute trade
 268
 musicians 414, 418, 424
 musk
 and the death of Chu Ti 272
 in tribute trade 505
 Muslims 433, 434
 mysterious pamphlet, case of
 548–50
 Nagasaki 長崎 587, 631, 699, 700
 Naghachu 納哈出 25, 130, 157–8,
 161, 167
 Naiman 乃蠻 20, 114
 Naitō Kenkichi 内藤乾吉 789
 Nakayama Hachirō 中川八郎 787
 Nan-ch’ang 南昌 41, 61, 65, 66,
 and Ch’en Yu-liang 61, 65, 66

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

936

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Nan-ch'ang (*cont.*)
 Ch'ing conquest of 686, 690
 Ming field armies in 89, 92
 and Ming loyalists 684
 and the Prince of Ning's rebellion
 429, 430, 435
 1361 rebellion of 78, 79, 81
 1363 siege of 83–4, 85
 19 map2, 429 map21
Nan-chao yeh shih 南詔野史 773
Nan chiang i shih 南疆逸史 811
Nan chiang i shih k'an pen
 南疆釋史刊本 811 n24
nan-chiao 南郊 (Southern suburban
 altar) 111
Nan-ch'ih tzu 南池子 745
Nan Chihli 南直隸, *see* Southern
 Metropolitan Region
Nan-ching 南京 (Southern Capital),
 see Nanking
Nan-hai 南海 680
Nan-hai-tzu 南海子 418
Nan-hu tsui 南湖觜 85, 87
Nan-k'ang 南康 79, 426
Nan-Ming shih lüeh 南明史略 815
Nan-ning 南寧 133
 and the Yung-li court 683, 685,
 705
 and Li Ting-kuo 704
 664 map29, 696 map30
Nan-yang 97, 635–6; 121 map5,
 633 map27
Nanjing Daxue 南京大學 785
Nanking 南京
 as capital 47, 51–2, 57, 114, 118,
 182, 200–2, 203, 209, 237,
 282–3, 488–9
 as capital in the Southern Ming
 640, 641–60, 662
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung's 1659
 Yangtze campaign 719–21; 696
 map30
 as Chi-ch'ing 47, 70
 as Chiang-ning (Ch'ing)
- provincial seat of Kiangnan)
 661–2
 as Chien-k'ang 13, 16
 Ch'ing conquest of 656, 658–60,
 665, 675, 685
 in early Ming 24, 25, 26, 32, 69–
 70, 73–77
 eunuchs in 465, 650
 as garrison in Yüan 13
 historical sources for 766
 Jesuits in 562
 as *liu-tu* (residual capital) 244,
 642, 643, 661, 755–6
 as Nan-ching (Southern Capital
 114, 242, 422–3, 430, 643
 officials and government offices
 in 238, 242–4, 522, 537, 540,
 541, 543, 553, 642, 643–60
 and piracy 495, 499
 as provincial capital of the
 Southern Metropolitan Region
 643
 as Ying-t'ien 47, 52, 70, 112, 114,
 238, 281
 19 map2, 75 map3, 110 map4, 197
 map8, 633 map27, 664 map29,
 696 map30
 (National) Bureau of
 Historiography (*Kuo-shih
 kuan*), *see* Bureau of
 Historiography
 national histories, *see* histories,
 national
 National University (*Kuo-tzu
 chien*) 108, 122, 131, 139, 147,
 149, 154, 163–4, 188, 210, 220,
 238, 242, 302, 353, 457, 542,
 548, 620, 742, 743
 native chieftain (*t'u-ssu*) 146, 381–4,
 702
 natural disasters 250, 255, 281, 295,
 309–12, 334–7, 355–7, 387,
 472–4, 479, 487–9, 496, 586,
 615, 621–3, 621 n118, 632

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

937

- navy 36, 60, 64, 69, 70, 73–88, 96–7, 711
 in the Hung-wu reign 101, 112, 127, 168
 in the Yung-lo reign 246, 770, 773
 in the Hsüan-te reign 302–3, 770
 in the Cheng-te reign 429–30, 770
 in the Chia-ching reign 495
 in the Wan-li reign 569–74
 in the Southern Ming: in the Lung-wu reign 670, 674; in the Lu regency 693, 699–701
Nayir Bukha 乃兒不花 161–2
Nayira'u 乃刺兀 157
Nei chih jih chi 內直日記 753
nei-ko 內閣, *see* grand secretariat
nei shu-t'ang 內書堂 (palace school for eunuchs) 287, 306
Nei wu fu 內武府, *see* Palace Army
 neo-Confucianism 3, 5, 184, 509, 532–6, 540, 545, 551–2, 729–32, 754, 781
 historical sources for 788, 807
 New Year celebrations 377, 338, 416, 417
Nghê-an 乂安 231; 234 map11
ni-an 逆案 (pernicious cases) 647–8
Ni ch'en lu 逆臣錄 (Record of treasonous ministers) 172
Ni Wen-chün 倪文俊 40, 47, 64–5
Ni Yüan-lu 倪元璐 613, 620
Nien erh shih cha chi 廿二史劄記 784
Nien erh shih k'ao i 廿二史考異 786
Nien Fu 年富 328, 342
nien-hao 年號 (reign name) 748
nien-piao 年表 (chronological tables) 753
Nikan 尼勘 704
 Nine Defense Areas (*chiu-pien*) 249, 373, 399
 historical sources for 771–2
 Nine Ministers' Conference 539
 Ning, Prince of 寧王, *see* Chu Ch'en-hao
 Ning, Prince of 寧王, *see* Chu Ch'üan
Ning-chou 寧州 116
Ning-kuo 寧國 71, 662
Ning-po 寧波 36, 97, 112, 140, 155, 169, 498
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 719
 as Maritime Trading Intendancy 269, 491–5
 and Ming loyalists 694
 497 map23, 696 map30, 713 map31
Ning-yüan 寧原 602, 611
Ningsia [Ning-hsia] 寧夏 171, 171t, 399, 400; 121 maps, 390 map19
 as border garrison 249
 city of 566–7
 fortifications in 474
 governor of 451
 and taxation 409
Niu-mao-chai 牛毛寨 582; 578 map25
Niu Yü 牛玉 369
 nobility, hereditary, *see* hereditary nobility
 nobility of merit 104–5, 124, 130, 133–4, 159, 172, 173, 206–8, 320, 367, 371, 372, 401, 702
 historical sources for 788
see also hereditary military nobles
 noncanonical writers, division of (*tzu-pu*) [book classification category] 728, 763–6
 nonofficial histories, *see* histories, nonofficial/unofficial
 “normal purchasing system” 297;
see also grain
 North China plain 58, 94–6, 108, 112–20, 472, 478, 621
 Northern Metropolitan Region (Pei Chihli)
 administration of 242–4
 bricks for 239

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

938

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Northern Metropolitan (*cont.*)
 Ch'ing troops in 651, 655, 679
 economic conditions in 590
 1400 battles in 198
 garrison in 321
 and grain production 587, 660
 historical sources on 779
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 638–9
 Manchu attacks in 616–21, 629–30, 636–7
 natural disasters in 336
 rebellion in 641
 refugees to 604
 relief in 298 n200
 supplies to 643
 troops in 245–7, 327
 and White Lotus rebellion 605
 419 map20, 431 map22
 notebooks (*pi-chi*) [type of writing] 763, 777
 novels 546, 588 n5, 728; *see also* literature
 Nu-erh-kan 奴兒干 267, 398; 224 map9
 Nu River 怒江 707
Nung cheng ch'üan shu 農政全書 776
nung-min ch'i-i 農民起義 (peasant uprisings) 785
 Nurhaci 努爾哈赤 557–8, 601–2, 616
 major discussion of 574–84
 Yang Hao's offensive against 578 map25
 obituaries (*chi-wen*) [type of writing] 732, 761
 office, sale of 546, 650
 Office for Transmitting Policy (*Ch'eng-hsüan pu-cheng ssu*) 136–7
 Office of Transmission (*T'ung-cheng ssu*) 138, 359, 648; 243 map13
 offices of scrutiny (*k'o*) 152, 687, 731
 official histories, *see* histories, official/standard
Official history of the Ming dynasty, *see* *Ming shih*
Official history of the Yüan dynasty, *see* *Yüan shih*
 official rank 279, 286, 365–6, 546, 736–7, 742 n56
see also merit ratings
 officials
 biographies of 747, 760–3, 765, 768, 772, 778, 779, 789, 793, 795, 804, 806
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 721
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 637–40
 lists of 755, 769, 778, 780
 military 763, 769; *see also* military affairs
 military vs. civil predominance 9, 669, 673, 677, 684–6, 689–90, 701, 714, 721
 officials, organization of (*chih-kuan*) 728
 unauthorized retirement of 529, 542, 543, 553–4
 and the writing of history 736–46, 755–6, 792, 796, 799, 801, 802
 officials, civil 4, 6, 343, 721
 in the Hung-wu reign 98, 107, 113–16, 119, 124, 132, 137–42, 146ff, 155–7, 163, 169
 in the Chien-wen reign 186–8, 191–2, 203, 790–1
 in the Yung-lo reign 5, 206, 208–12, 219, 240–2, 358
 in the Hung-hsi reign 276–84, 793
 in the Hsüan-te reign 793
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 343–51, 358–64, 364–70, 381–4, 386–9, 394–7, 400–24
 in the Hung-chih reign 343–4, 351–7, 358–70, 371, 381–4, 394–7

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

939

- in the Cheng-te reign: Chapter 7
 in the Chia-ching reign 441–61,
 465–6, 471–9, 482–90, 490–
 510, 800
 in the Lung-ch'ing reign 512–14
 in the Wan-li reign 514–84
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 750
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 611–14,
 618–21, 627–31, 634–7, 641
 in the Southern Ming: in the
 Hung-kuang reign 643–60,
 662–3, 676–7; in the Lung-wu
 reign 666–7, 669, 671–4, 677,
 678, 681, 693–5; in the Lu
 regency 667–8, 669, 693, 695;
 in the Yung-li reign 676–92,
 705–10
 Ögödei 窝闊台 12
 Oirat 瓦刺 (衛喇特衛拉特), *see*
 Oirat Mongols
 Oirat Mongols 258, 316–17, 344,
 393, 394, 466ff, 472
 1409–24 campaigns against
 223–9
 1430s leadership of 299–300
 224 map9
 see also foreign relations, with the
 Oirat; Mongols, Western
 omens
 comets 479
 cranes 507
 deer 479, 503
 earthquakes 282
 fire 241
 natural disasters 355–6, 479
 records of 747
 roseate clouds 440–1
 stars and planets 136, 326
 thunder 127
 thunderbolt-overturned flagpole
 541
 white rabbits 479
 wind-blown banner 81
 Yellow River running clear 440–1
 Onon 幹難 River 226
 opera 811; *see also* drama; playwrights
 Opium War 556
 orders to subordinate officials (*p'ai*)
 [document type] 767
 Ordos 鄂爾多斯 397, 398, 400–2,
 415, 557
 and Altan 473
 1547–51 campaign in 474–5, 477,
 481, 483–4
 1592 campaign in 566–7
 as Ho-t'ao 400
 location of 467
 pastureland in 471
 419 map20
 Ordos Mongols 鄂爾多斯部 397
 Ordos Tümet 鄂爾多斯土默特部
 316
 Orkhon River 鄂爾渾河 103
 Orlug Temür 月魯帖木兒 178
 orthodoxy 184, 218–21, 449–50
 see also Confucian values;
 heterodoxy
 Ortrar 259
 ostriches, in tribute trade 235
 Osumi 大隅, lord of 499, 501
 Ottoman Turkey 258; 224 map9
 Ou River 甌江 719
 Ou-yang Lun 歐陽倫 179
 Ōuchi 大内 491
 outer court 4, 6, 286, 348, 358, 360,
 363, 365, 366, 512, 534, 539,
 550, 553, 554
 in Southern Ming 687–8
 see also inner court; ministries
 and ministers
 Outer Mongolia 23, 100, 102, 103,
 223–9, 264–6
 overseers (*ts'ui-tsuan*) 742, 744
 oxen
 as draft animals 337
 as sacrificial animals 582
 in tribute trade 268, 476
 Pa-chou 霸州 413
 Pacification Office (*hsüan-wei ssu*)

940

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Pacification Office (*cont.*)
 146, 383, 702, 708
 pacifying and soothing (*an-fu*) 292
 Pahang (P'en-heng kuo) 168 n178,
 235; 234 map11
 Pai-hua kuo 白花國, *see* Battak
 Pai-kou 白溝 River 198; 197 map8
 Pai Kuei 白圭 387, 401, 474
Pai-lien chiao 白蓮教, *see* White
 Lotus/Society
 Pai River 白河 251
pai-shih 碑史 (unofficial histories)
 808
 Pai Ts'ui-ch'in 白翠琴 795
p'ai 牌 (orders to subordinate
 officials) 767
 painting 546
 historical sources for 775
see also art; calligraphy
 Palace Army (*Nei wu fu*) 466, 477
 palace buildings 201, 203, 238–42;
 243 map13
see also construction; fire
 Palace of the Honoring Ancestors
 (*Feng-hsien tien*) 124–5
 palace women, *see* empresses
 dowager; women in the
 imperial household; names of
 individual emperors, consorts of
 Palembang 舊港 233, 235–6; 234
 map11
 Palermo 585
 Pamirs 帕米爾 (葱嶺) 467
pan-tu 伴讀 (readers-in-attendance)
 191
 P'an Ch'eng-chang 潘稩章 784, 787
 P'an Chi-hsün 潘季馯 523, 776
 Pan Tsung-yen 潘宗顏 582
 P'an Yüan-ming 潘元明 93
 P'an Yüan-shao 潘元紹 35
 Pandita (班的達, 板的達, 班廸達)
 128 n50, 262
pang-wen 榜文 (notices) 189
 P'ang T'ien-shou 龐天壽 692
 Pangasinan 560
 Pantoja, Diego de 597
 Pao-ch'ing 寶慶 704–5, 706; 696
 map30
pao-ch'u'an 寶船 (treasure ships)
 232
pao-fang 豹房, *see* Leopard Quarter
pao-hsün 寶訓 (precious
 injunctions) 744, 745
pao pien 寶贊 (“praise and blame”)
 739
 Pao-ting 保定 99, 115, 198
 historical sources for 772
 as Regional Military Commission
 222
 197 map8
 paper, in tribute trade 268
 paper money, in tribute trade 257,
 261, 264, 265, 267, 589
see also monetary system
 party (*tang*) 532
 passes, *see* borders, defense of;
 Ch'i-hsing Pass; Chia-yü Pass;
 Chü-yung Pass; Fen-shui Pass;
 Fu-shun Pass; Great Wall; Hsi-
 feng Pass; Hsien-hsia Pass;
 Hu-lao Pass; Ku-pei Pass; Lu-
 lung Pass; Mei Pass; Pien-t'ou
 Pass; Shan Pass; Shan-hai Pass;
 Ta-sheng Pass; T'ung Pass;
 Tzu-ching Pass; Ya-ku Pass;
 Yen-men Pass; Yü-ling Pass
 patents (*ts'e-wen*) [*document type*]
 738
 patriarchy 535
 pawn shops (*tang-p'u*) 588
 peaches as symbol of longevity 508
 Pearl River 珠江 7, 377
 pearls in tribute trade 278, 575
 peasant uprisings (*nung-min ch'i-i*)
 785
 peasants 4, 336, 535, 551, 557, 563,
 604, 623–6, 663, 754, 785, 806,
 815

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

941

- Pei-chen 北鎮 (county) 170
Pei cheng chi 北征記 792
Pei cheng lu 北征錄 792
 Pei Chihli 北直隸, *see* Northern Metropolitan Region
 Pei-ching 北京, *see* K'ai-feng
 Pei-ching 北京, *see* Peking
 pei-p'an River 北盤江 707; 659 map28
 Pei-p'ing 北平, *see* Peking
 Pei River 北江 679
 p'ei 配 (coadjutors) 459
 P'ei 沛 [P'ei-hsien 沛縣] 61; 197 map8
 Peking 北京
 as capital of the Ch'ing dynasty 652, 655, 676, 691
 as capital of the Ming dynasty 182, 209, 211, 227, 231, 237–56, 261, 273–6, 295, 318, 319–22, 325–31, 334, 370–6, 389–92, 484, 604, 643, 677
 as capital of the Shun interregnum 637–40
 and Chu Yüan-chang's conquest of 96–9, 113ff
 defense of 321–30, 414–15, 442, 451, 475–9, 513, 583, 600–1, 616–19, 621, 627–31, 634–40, 668
 gates of 9, 241, 321, 328, 419–20, 421, 436, 438, 443, 475
 Jesuits in 562–3
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng's conquest of 9, 638–40, 641, 677
 location of 585
 as Pei-ching 238
 as Pei-p'ing 97–8, 113, 193
 as princely estate 120, 171t, 193, 196, 237
 rebellions in the vicinity of 196–9, 412–14, 475–9, 615–18
 as Shun-t'ien 238
 as Ta-tu 12, 13, 31, 33, 36, 43, 59, 88, 95, 97, 108, 111, 112–13, 115, 237, 241, 244
 19 map2, 121 maps, 240 map12, 323 map16, 633 map27
Peking gazette (Ching pao) 543, 735
 see also *Metropolitan gazette*
Pen ch'ao fen sheng jen wu k'ao 本朝分省人物考 762
pen-chi 本紀 (basic annals) 727
Pen ts'ao kang mu 本草綱目 776–7
P'en-heng kuo 濫亨國, *see* Pahang
 Peng-pu 蚌埠 44
 Peng 彭 surname 127
P'eng-hu Islands 澎湖島, *see* Pescadores
 P'eng Shih 彭時 341, 360, 367, 400, 796
 P'eng Ta 彭大 61, 62, 68
 P'eng Ying-yü 彭瑩玉 38–9, 40, 42, 65, 785
 people, welfare of the 309–14, 352, 354, 356
 Pereira, Galeote 802, 803
 perfection (*ch'eng*) 273
 pernicious cases (*ni-an*) 647–8
 pernicious clique, *see* clique, pernicious
 see also “pure element”; “righteous” leaders; Tung-lin party; “upright” camp
 Persian Gulf 8, 183, 222, 235, 270, 302
 Peru 589, 604
 Pescadores (*P'eng-hu Islands*) 603, 722; 713 map31
 Phag-mo-gru-pa 261, 264
 pharmacopoeia, historical sources for 776–7
 Philip II of Spain 556, 559, 561
 Philippines 270
 and Spanish silver 614–15, 627, 631
 and trade with China 587–90, 604

942

GLOSSARY – INDEX

- Philippines (*cont.*)
 Chinese emigration to 8
 Sino-Spanish clashes in 631
see also foreign relations, with the Philippines
 philology and imperial rituals 449–50
 philosophers, division of (*tzu-pu*) [book classification category] 728
see also noncanonical writers
 philosophy 1, 2, 6, 221, 532–6, 540, 544–5, 551–2, 592–3, 599, 733, 758
 studies on 9, 807
see also Buddhism; Confucianism; Legalism; Neo-Confucianism; religion; Taoism
 physicians, *see* medicine
 physiology, historical sources for 775
pi-chi 筆記 (collected notes, notebooks) 763
 Pi Kung 單恭 772
 Pi Ssu 單四 26
piao 表 (address to emperor) 728, 767
piao 表 (tables) 727
p'iao-i 票擬 (process for reviewing memorials) 286–7
 pickles in tribute trade 301
 picul (*shih/tan*, capacity/ weight unit) xxi, 294–8
pieh-shih 別史 (private/semi-official histories, separate histories) 727, 764, 808
pien 變 (to turn) 300
pien-chen 邊鎮 (border defense command) 248–9
Pien cheng k'ao 邊政考 772
pien-hsiu 編修 (second-class compilers) 736, 742, 742 n54
Pien-liang 沛梁, *see* K'ai-feng
- pien-nien* 編年 (annalistic pattern) 727, 747
P'ien-t'ou Pass 偏頭關 422; 419 map20
 pigs, prohibition against raising 432–3
pin-fu 賓輔 (guest guardians) 191
 Pindalè 709
ping-chia 兵家 (“military writers”) 728
P'ing An 平安 198–200
P'ing-liang 平涼 116, 118, 171t, 604; 121 maps
p'ing-mi fa 平米法 (leveling grain surcharge) 297
P'ing-mien 平緬 146
P'ing-ting 平定 115
P'ing-tu chou 平度州 618
P'ing-yang 平陽 115
P'ing-yao 平遙 136
 piracy 169, 269–70, 300, 487, 520, 559, 560–2, 568, 589, 604–5, 610, 614, 630, 663, 672, 675, 677, 678, 680–1, 693, 701 historical sources for 774, 799, 801 major discussion of 490–505 497 map23
 pirates in Canton 24, 678–81 in Malacca 433 in Nanking 488, 497 map23 in the Philippines 560–2 from Portugal 433 along southeastern coast 36, 159, 168, 300, 303, 490–505, 559, 610, 614, 672, 711, 714 in Sumatra 233
 Pires, Tomé 433–4, 802
Placard of instructions to the people (*Chiao min pang wen*) 179–81, 754
 place, essays on (*chi*) [type of writing] 728, 735, 780

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

943

- plague 310, 356; 311 map15
 playwrights 710; *see also* drama; opera
 Po-chou 毫州, Anhwei 42, 43, 61, 67; 19 map2
 Po-chou 播州, Szechwan – Kweichow border 381, 382
 1590s campaign of 563–5
 Po-chü ch'ang 白駒場 30
 Po-hai 勃海, Gulf of 392; 225
 map10, 578 map25
 Po-hsien 亳縣 42
po-hu so 百戶所 (companies of 100 men) 91
 Po-ni kuo 淳泥國, *see* Brunei
 P'o-yang Lake 鄱陽湖 434, 674
 1363 battle of 41, 55, 72, 78,
 major discussion of 82–88, 89,
 100, 120
 19 map2, 121 maps, 429 map21
 poetry 9, 16, 155–6, 439, 440, 441,
 764, 778, 804
 poets 758, 789
 biographies of 763, 789
see also literature; poetry
 poison 155, 283; *see also* arsenic;
 immortality, elixirs of; lead
 political institutions, works on
 (*cheng-shu*) 728, 734, 778, 793
see also encyclopedias, political
 Polo, Marco 803
 population 1
 growth of, in late Ming and early Ch'ing 809
 in late Yüan 64, 66, 70, 72, 87–8,
 94
 records of 747, 778, 779, 780
 redistribution of 8, 123–4, 129,
 222–3, 238, 247, 265, 309–12,
 386–9, 567, 576, 586–7
 porcelain
 as export time 587
 for imperial use 589
 production of 366
 in tribute trade 271, 319, 505
 pornography 348; *see also* sexual practices
 Port Arthur, *see* Lü-shun
 portents, *see* omens
 Portugal 7–8, 433–4, 491, 599–60,
 603–4, 615, 621, 637, 692, 710,
 799, 802–3
see also foreign relations, with Portugal
 postal stations 267
 postal system 524, 615, 641, 729
 posthumous instructions (*i-chao*)
 591
 posthumous titles 201, 755
 “praise and blame” (*pao-pien*) 739,
 747–8, 764
 precious injunctions (*pao-hsün*) 744,
 745, 753
 prefectures (*fu*) 778
 prestamped documents case (*k'ung-yin an*) 135–6
 prime minister, *see* Secretariat
 primogeniture 177–8, 184–5, 192,
 216, 516, 538
 prince (*wang*) 46, 223, 393
 Prince of Radiance, *see* Han Lin-erh
 princely guards (*hu-wei*) 177, 244–5
see also escort guards
 princes, Manchu 652, 656, 657, 704,
 722
see also Ajige; Dodo; Dorgon;
 Junta; Keng Chi-mao; Nikan
 princes 132, 175–6; 121 maps
 in the Hung-wu reign 118, 120,
 131–6, 138–9, 147–8, 161–2,
 164, 169–71, 171t, 172–4, 174
 n211, 175–8, 181, 203, 245–6
 in the Chien-wen reign 191–3,
 215, 245
 in the Yung-lo reign 207, 210,
 244–7, 292
 in the Hung-hsi reign 278, 292
 in the Hsüan-te reign 288–9, 292

944

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- princes (*cont.*)
 in the T'ien-shun reign 326–7,
 423
 in the Cheng-te reign 409–12,
 416, 422, 423–30, 436–9, 445
 in the Chia-ching reign 440–1,
 464, 479, 489
 in the Lung-ch'ing reign 521
 in the Wan-li reign 517, 538, 547–
 50, 589
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 631
 in the Southern Ming: in the
 Hung-kuang reign 642, 647,
 649–50, 653–5, 660, 660 n20,
 661, 662, 663–9; in the Lung-
 wu reign 668, 676–7; in the Lu
 regency 668, 695–6, 698; in the
 Yung-li reign 678
 historical sources for 757
 princesses 173, 515
 printing and publishing 9, 726, 729,
 759 n102, 781–2, 808, 809, 814
 private histories, *see* histories,
 private/semi-official
 privy purse, *see* treasuries,
 emperor's personal
 proclamation (*chao*) [document
 type] 738, 739
 progenitor (*tsu*) 273
 pronouncements (*kao*) [type of
 document] 189
 Protector of the State (*chien-kuo*)
 326–7, 427, 642–3
see also regent
 proto-banks (*ch'ien-chuang*) 588
 provinces (*sheng*) 778
 Provincial Administration Office
 292
 provincial government
 in the Ch'ing 684, 705, 715
 established by Chu Yüan-chang
 56, 98, 101
 in the Ming 104, 105, 136–7, 407,
 426, 428, 429, 434–5, 455,
 489–510, 517, 520, 523, 524,
 527–8, 537, 540, 547, 559–60,
 609, 614, 617
 Red Turban formation of 52
 in the Southern Ming 666, 671,
 676, 687–8, 702
 in the Yüan 20, 24, 25, 33, 52, 56,
 70–1, 144
 provincial military organizations
 244, 247–8, 373, 374
 Provincial Surveillance Offices (*An-*
ch'a ssu) 141, 292
 Provintia, Fort 723
pu 步 (double pace, length unit) xxi
pu 部 (ministries) 731, 740
 P'u, Prince of 濬 [i.e., *see* Chao Shu]
 P'u-an 普安 160, 381; 145 map7
 P'u-ch'eng 浦城 697
 P'u Ch'eng-en 哮承恩, 博承恩
 566–7
 P'u-chou 蒲州 116
p'u-hsi 譜系 (tables and registers)
 781
 P'u-k'ou 浦口 645
 P'u-ting 普定 144; 145 map7
p'u-tu hui 普度會 (ceremony for all
 souls) 128
 P'u-tzu k'ou 浦子口 200
 publishing, *see* printing and
 publishing
 punishment 22, 24, 27, 28, 39, 40,
 48, 133, 135–6, 149–51, 154–
 7, 176, 178, 179, 180, 189, 202,
 280–1, 405–9, 411, 639
see also names of individual
emperors, response to opposition
and criticism
 Purchas, Samuel 803
 “pure element” 642, 646–9, 670
 n31
see also “righteous” leaders;
 Tung-lin party; “upright”
 camp
 Purple Mountain, *see* Tzu-chin shan

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

945

- Pusan 釜山 571–3; 569 map24
 Pübei 哺拜 (博拜) 566–7, 567 n30
 Pye Min 709
 P'yöng-yang [Pyongyang] 平壤
 166, 568; 569 map24
- Quemoy, *see* Chin-men (island)
 queue 662, 684
 Quilon 233; 234 map11
- rabbits as auspicious omen 479
 Rada, Martín de 560–1, 803
 rank, *see* official rank
 rattan 377–80
 readers-in-attendance (*pan-tu*) 191
 readers-in-waiting (*shih-tu*) 742
 real estate, taxes on 650; *see also*
 land tax
 rebels and rebellion 806, 815; *see*
 also banditry; bandits
 in the late Yüan: Chapters 1 and
 2
 in the Chien-wen reign 193–202
 in the Hsüan-te reign 309
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 309–16,
 322, 331, 333, 336
 in the Ching-t'ai reign 335–9
 in the T'ien-shun reign 341
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 377–89
 in the Chia-ching reign 450–2
 in the Wan-li reign 520, 552, 557–
 8, 564–5, 566–7, 590–1
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 601, 610–
 11, 628
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 615–16,
 621–3, 626–70, 701; 624–5
 map26
 in the Southern Ming 204,
 Chapter 11
Record of the eternal mirror (*Yung
 chien lu*) 173
Record of treasonous ministers (*Ni
 ch'en lu*) 172
 recorder of the left 731, 736, 738
 recorder of the right 731, 736, 738
 records of current government
 (*shih-cheng chi*) 740
 recruitment 15–17, 47–57, 121–2,
 132–3, 142–3
 see also examinations; officials
 rectification (*cheng*) 403 n1
 rectify faults and shortcomings
 (*sheng yen chiu miu*) 279–80
 Red Armies, *see* Red Turban
 rebellions
 Red Pill Case (*hung-wan an*) 593,
 598, 609
 “red pills” (*hung-wan*) 593
 Red River 230; 234 map11
 Red Turban rebellions 18, 20, 23,
 26, 27, 34, 44, 45, 60, 62,
 Chapter 2, 124
 contrasted with the T'ai-p'ing
 rebellion 37–8
 southern and northern
 movements compared 67,
 142–3
 Red Turban rebellions, northern 31,
 32, 38, 41–2, 42–3, 46–7, 67–
 8ff, 82–3, 94, 97
 capital cities of 40, 42, 43, 51, 52,
 61, 67–8
 Chu Yüan-chang joins 38, 41,
 45–7, 49–57, 108, 787
 leaders of: Chang T'ien-yu 47;
 Chao Chü-yang 61; Han Lin-
 erh 40, 41, 42–3, 47; Han
 Shan-t'ung 39–40; Kuo Tzu-
 hsing 45–7; Lin Fu-t'ung 40,
 42–3, 61; P'eng Ta 61
 Red Turban rebellions, southern 31,
 37–9, 40–2, 58–68
 battle at Lake P'o-yang 41, 55
 capital cities of 40–1, 47–8
 leaders of: Ch'en Yu-liang 34, 38,
 40–1, 51, 55; Hsü Shou-hui
 40–1, 47–8, 61; Ming Yü-chen
 41–2; Ni Wen-chün 40, 47–8;

- Red Turban rebellions (*cont.*)
 P'eng Ying-yü 38–9, 40, 42;
 Tsou P'u-sheng 40
- Red Turbans, also known as Red
 Armies, Incense Armies 60
- reeds, taxes on 650
- regent 217, 278, 283, 303, 305–7,
 309, 322, 337
- absence of provision for, in
Ancestral injunctions 367, 367
 n10
- Manchus 652
- in the Southern Ming 642–3, 660,
 660 n19, 665, 703
- see also* Protector of the State
- regicide 638
- regional commanders (*tsung ping-kuan*) 249
- regional history, *see history, regional*
- Regional Inspectorate 553; *see also Censorate*
- Regional Military Commission (*Tu-chih-hui shih ssu, Tu-ssu*) 105,
 137, 177, 222, 246, 249, 251,
 267, 292, 392, 398, 678
- regional military leaders in the late
 Yüan 13, 18, 19–25, 32, 58, 61,
 63, 66, 67, 72, 88, 89, 94–6, 99,
 109; 19 map2
- Basalawarmi (in Yunnan) 24
- Bolod Temür (in Shansi) 21–3
- Chaghan Temür (in Honan) 20–2
- Chang Liang-pi (in Shensi) 23
- Chang Shih-ch'eng (in Soochow)
 30–5
- Ch'en Yu-ting (in Fukien) 23–4
- Fang Kuo-chen (coastal Chekiang
 and Fukien) 36–7
- Ho Chen (in Kwangtung) 24–5
- Kökö Temür (in Honan) 19–23
- K'ung Hsing (in Shensi) 23
- Li Ssu-ch'i (in Honan and Shensi)
 20, 23
- Naghachu (in Liaotung) 25
- Törebeg (in Shensi) 23
- regionalism 2, 140, 142, 178–9, 251,
 254–6, 280, 306, 350, 360–1,
 487, 539, 542–4, 568, 585–6,
 588, 590, 610, 666, 762, 763
- historical sources for 777–81
see also factionalism
- regularly appointed civil service
 officials (*liu-kuan*) 383
- reign name (*nien-hao*) 748
- see also individual names of emperors; list of emperors at beginning of this volume; titles of chapters in this volume*
- relay transport, *see transport, relay*
- relief 183–4, 298, 337, 356, 387,
 487, 503–4, 552, 587, 615, 661
- historical sources for 756
see also natural disasters
- relief grain 255, 281, 297, 298, 310–11, 472–3, 700
- relief granary (*chi-nung ts'ang*) 297
- religion
- folk religion 14, 39, 43, 50–2, 60,
 67, 70, 98, 122, 313, 386, 558,
 561–3, 590–1
- historical sources for 765, 775
- imperial regulation of 114–15,
 122, 137, 146–8, 362, 417–18
- in Japan 270
- studies on, in the Ming 9
- in Tibet 261–4, 417–18
- Western religions in China 618,
 692, 723
- see also* Buddhism; Catholicism;
 Christianity; Jesuits;
 Manicheism; missionaries;
 Taoism
- rent 313–14, 345, 626, 632
see also landlords; tenant farmers
- reports [to the emperor] (variously
i, piao, chien, ts'e) 767
- rescripts 358–9, 517, 519, 523, 525,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

947

- 526, 537, 552, 737, 739
see also memorials
- resistance of Ming loyalists to Ch'ing domination: Chapter 11
- Revelation of the evil faction (Chao shih chien tang lu)* 142, 163
- rhinoceroses in tribute trade 235
 horns of 546
- Ricci, Matteo 562–3, 775
- rice 251, 418, 587, 632, 637, 660; *see also* grain
- “righteous” leaders 666, 669–70, 670 n1, 673, 688–9
see also “pure element;” Tung-lin party; “upright” camp
- Rin-spungs, Prince of 417–18
- ritual 221, 439, 441–3, 456, 456 n18, 457–61, 509, 526, 552, 737, 744–5
 debate on 443–50, 475–61
 and imperial accession 98, 108–12
 implementation of, in early Ming 107–11, 116–20
 sources for 754–5, 755, 775, 791, 799
- Yüan use of Chinese 15
- ritual sacrifice 457–61
 to Heaven 418, 422, 436, 458
 to Hsien Nung (the spirit of agriculture) 116
 to the moon 458
 to Shang-ti, the Lord-on-high 108, 459
 at the southern altar 124
 to spirits of city walls 115, 789
 to spirits of rain 122
 to spirits of rivers and streams 108
 to spirits of the stove 122
 to the sun 458
see also altars of state
- rockets 312; *see also* firearms
- Rol-pa'i-rdo-rje (patriarch of the Black Hat sect of Lamaist
- Buddhism) 262
- Rome 692
- Round Mound, *see* altars of state, to Heaven
- Ruggieri, Michele 562
- Russia 258
- Ryūkyū (Liu-ch'iu) 168, 168 n178, 300, 319, 700, 770
 historical sources for 780
 troops from 568
 497 map23
see also foreign relations, with the Ryūkyū Islands
- Ryūshitsu Dōen 龍室道淵 300
- ryūtō-dabi 龍頭蛇尾 (a dragon's head followed by a snake's tail) 574
- Sa-sky-a-pa (Tibetan religious order) 261–4
- sable in the tribute trade 575
- Sach'ön [Sach'ön] 泗川 573; 569
 map24
- Sakai 境 587
- Sakakura Atsuhide 阪倉篤秀 794
- sal ammoniac in the tribute trade 257
- salt
 administration of 756
 field workers 26, 28, 31
 fields 30, 34, 486
 revenues 30, 123, 357, 404, 409, 486, 650
 smuggling of 30, 169
 transport 30, 250–1
 in tribute trade 318
- salt voucher (*yin*) 122, 250–1, 404
see also monopolies, salt
- Salween River (怒曲, 潘江, 嘉里江) 775
- Samarkand 撒馬兒罕 223, 792
 historical sources for 772
 as Timur's base 258–61
 224 map9

- Samarkand (cont.)**
see also foreign relations, with Samarkand
- San-ch'a River** 三叉江 76; 75 map3
- San ch'ao Liao shih shih lu** 三朝遼事實錄 772
- San ch'ao yao tien** 三朝要典 (Essential documents of three reigns) 609, 613, 648, 749–50, 751, 753, 755
- San-ch'i'en ying** 三千營 (Camp of Three Thousand) 248
- san fa-ssu** 三法司 (three judicial agencies) 367–70
- San-fo-ch'i kuo** 三弗齊國, *see* Srivijaya
- San-sha** 三沙 Bay 718
- san-ssu** 三司 (the three provincial offices) 292; *see also* Provincial Administration Office; Provincial Surveillance Offices; Regional Military Commission
- san ta-an** 三大案 (three great cases) 609
- san ta-cheng** 三大征 (three major campaigns [of the Wan-li reign]) 557, 563–74
see also Korea, and 1592 and 1597
 Korean campaigns; Ordos; Po-chou, Szechwan
- san ta-ying** 三大營 (three great camps) 247–8
- San ts'ai t'u hui** 三才圖會 774
- san wei** 三衛 (Three Commanderies) 222, 397
- Sancien Island** 上川島 562
- Sarhû 薩爾滸**, Battle of 581; 578 map25
- sarīra** (Buddhist relics) 268
- satin** in tribute trade 299, 301
- Satsuma** 薩摩 Island 573, 700
- Sayyid Husain** 穆亦虎仙 452–3
- scholar-officials**, *see* literati; officials
- schools, community** (*she-hsüeh*) 153; *see also* education
- science, Western, to China** 567
- script** Jurchen 576
 Korean bureaucratic 134
 Mongolian 576
- se-mu (jen)** 色目(人) (Central and Western Asians) 16, 20, 61, 98
- Seal Office** (*Shang-pao ssu*) 742
 minister of (*ch'ing*) 742
 vice-minister of (*shao-ch'ing*) 742, 743
- seal skins** in tribute trade 268
- seals of government** 242, 680, 685
- secret society**, *see* societies, secret
- Secretariat** (*Chung-shu sheng*) 4, 6, 39–43, 147, 165–6, 183, 208, 286, 358–9, 362, 365, 731
 Branch 56, 71, 112, 127, 136
- sectarian movements** 18, 34, 37–44, 49, 58
see also Red Turban rebellions; T'ai-p'ing rebellion; White Lotus Sect/Society
- sedan chair** 546
- self-cultivation** 533–6; *see also* neo-Confucianism
- semi-official histories**, *see* histories, private/semi-official
- Semudera** 蘇門答刺 233, 235; 234 map11
- Seng-lu ssu** 僧錄司 (Central Buddhist Registry) 146
- Sengge 辛愛** 478
- senior grand secretary** (*shou-fu*) 210, 362, 379, 407, 474, 475, 485, 493, 501, 504
see also grand secretariat and grand secretaries
- Seoul** (K. Hansöng; C. Wang-ching) 167, 301, 568–74; 497 map23; 569 map24
- separate histories**, *see* histories,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

949

- separate* (ministers of the Seal Office) 742
 sericulture 尚寶寺
 historical sources for 776
 ritual for 461
Seven grievances, Nurhachi's 1618
 statement of complaint against
 China 577
 sexual practices 283, 348, 351, 453,
 480–1, 650
 see also aphrodisiacs
 Sha-chou 沙州 317
Sha chu 殺豬 (kill pigs) 433
 Sha-hsien 沙縣 313, 314
 Sha-kya Ye-shes 263
 Sha River 沙河 252
 Sha Ting-chou 沙定洲 702–3
 Sha-wan 沙灣 356
Sha-wan 沙灣 Dikes 312
 Shāhrukh (fourth son of Timur)
 259–60
 Shāhrukh Bahādur 792
 shaman 410
 Shan-hai Pass [Shan-hai-kuan]
 山海關 392, 576, 600–2, 616–
 19, 636, 651; 225 map10
 historical sources on 772
 Shan Pass 杉關 674
 Shan 撻 people 146, 157, 160,
 314–16
 Shan-shih yüan 善世院 (Buddhist
 Affairs Academy) 114
shan-shu 善書 (books for the good)
 754
 Shan-tu-chang 山都掌 people 381
 Shan-tung 山東, as Ming political
 division 109, 392
 Shandong, *see* Shantung
 Shang 商, king of 371
Shang ch'eng i lan 商程一覽 776
 Shang K'o-hsi 尚可喜 691, 692
shang kung 上公 (exalted duke)
 609; *see also* Wei Chung-hsien
 Shang Lu 商輅 339, 362, 400
Shang-pao ssu ch'ing 尚寶寺卿
- 少卿 (vice-minister of the Seal
 Office) 742, 743
 shang-shu 尚書 (ministers) 105
 Shang-ti 上帝 (Lord-on-high) 108,
 459
 Shang-tu 上都 67, 113, 117, 120, 299
 n202
 Shang-Yin 商殷 dynasty 440 n1
 Shanghai 上海 585
 Shansi 山西 20
 army from 161
 as border garrison 249, 400, 520,
 772
 capital of 422
 Ch'ing troops in 651
 Chu Ti's 1400 campaign into 198
 earthquake in 478
 and the Great Wall 389
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 638
 military affairs in 628
 Ming conquest of 98, 99–100,
 114–15
 Mongol raids in 473, 474
 natural disasters in 309–11, 337
 rebel activity in 616, 621–3, 641
 Red Turban activity in 67, 94
 relief in 298 n200
 source for horses 318
 timber from 238
 troops from 327
 uprisings in 453, 651, 690
 390 map19, 624–5 map26, 659
 map25
 Shantung 山東 20, 21, 22, 392
 economic conditions in 590
 1512 bandits in 413
 financial records of 525
 1420s revolt in 309
 garrisons in 321
 governor of 496
 imperial estates in 642

950

GLOSSARY – INDEX

- Shantung (*cont.*)
 imperial tour through 422–3
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 635
 Manchu campaigns in 629, 630,
 636, 637
 Ming conquest of 96–7, 112
 Ming defense posts in 645
 natural disasters in 310, 335, 336
 ports in 573
 rebel activity in 641, 655
 Red Turban activity in 67, 68, 95
 relief in 298 n200
 as Shandong 804
 1631 political instability in 617–
 18
 sources on 804
 troops from 327
 water conservancy in 356–7
 and White Lotus sect 557, 605
 and the Yellow River 604, 655
 311 map 15, 431 map22, 659
 map28
- Shantung 山東 party, *see* Ch'i party
- Shao 郎, lady, *see* Chu Chien-shen,
 consorts of
- Shao-chou 韶州 690; 659 map28
- Shao-hsing 紹興 36, 493
 and the Lu regency 642 n2, 665,
 665 n24, 666–70, 675
 497 map23, 659 map28, 664
 map29
- Shao Jung 邵榮 76, 80, 81–2
shao-shih 少師 (junior preceptor) 611
- Shao-wu 紹武, Fukien 97
- Shao-wu 紹武 reign, *see* Chu Yü-yueh
- Shao Yüan-chieh 邵元節 479–80
- she* 祀 (sacrifices to the spirits of
 soil) 137
- she-hsüeh* 社學 (community
 schools) 153
- sheep, in tribute trade 257, 261, 476
- Shen-chi ying* 神機營 (Artillery
 Camp) 248
- Shen-ch'iu 沈丘 district 20
- Shen Chou 沈周 732 n15
- Shen-hsing yüan 審刑院 (Academy
 of Judicial Review) 151
- Shen I-kuan 沈一貫 529, 531–2,
 541, 547–9, 553, 573
- Shen Kuo-yüan 沈國元 758
- Shen Li 沈鯉 749
- Shen Mao-shang 慎懋賞 770
- Shen Shih-hsing 申時行 516–17,
 517 n2, 528–9, 536–7
- Shen Shih-jung 沈世榮 147
- shen-tao pei* 神道碑 (memorial
 tablets) 761
- Shen Te-fu 沈德符 751, 752, 764,
 766, 800
- Shen-tsung 神宗, *see* Chu I-chün
- Shen-tsung shih lu* 神宗實錄 750,
 751, 752
- Shen Wei-ching 沈惟敬 570–2
- Shen-yang 濬陽 (Mukden) 157, 166,
 600, 602, 616–17, 629, 652,
 772; 578 map25
- sheng* 升 (capacity unit) xxi
- sheng* 省 (provinces) 778
- sheng-cheng chi* 聖政記 753
- Sheng hsüeh hsin fa* 聖學心法 (The
 system of the mind-and-heart
 in the sage's learning) 218–19,
 791
- sheng Miao* 生苗 ("wild" Miao
 peoples) 383
- sheng yen chiu miu* 繼愆糾謬
 (rectify faults and short-
 comings) 279–80
- Sheng Yung 盛庸 198–9, 200
- sheng-yü* 聖諭 (imperial edicts) 738
- Shensi 陝西 20, 43
 and Bayan Temür 130
 borders of 400
 as Chang Hsien-chung's base 701
 Ch'ing armies in 655–6
 earthquake in 478

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

951

- and factionalism 542 n10
 Great Wall in 389
 and imperial clansmen 489
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 635–6
 Ming conquest of 96, 98, 99–100,
 114, 116–17
 Mongol raids in 472–3, 474
 natural disasters in 310–11, 337
 officials to 292
 rebellion in 409–12, 483–4, 610,
 615–16, 621–3, 628, 630
 Red Turban activity in 67, 90, 94
 relief in 298 n200
 silver from 566
 and taxation 409
 and tea – horse markets 318
 and textile requisitions 465
 troops from 565
 uprisings in 651
 390 map19, 624–5 map26
Shensi 陝西 party, *see* Ch'in party
shih 史 (history, historiographer)
 736
shih 釐 (picul, capacity/weight unit)
 xxi; *see also* *tan*
shih 詩 (poetry) 727, 728; *see also*
 literature; poetry
shih 世, as an honorific term 724
 n83
Shih Ch'ao-hsien lu 使朝鮮錄 774
Shih ch'en tsung lu 世臣總錄
 (Comprehensive record of the
 ministers of the ages) 173
shih-cheng 時政 (current
 government) 739
shih-cheng chi 時政記 (records of
 current government) 740
Shih ch'eng k'ao wu 史乘考誤
 (investigation of the errors in
 historical works) 731, 760
Shih-chi 史記 727
shih-chi 事蹟 (record of events) 748
shih-chia 世家 (chronicles of noble
 families) 757, 758, 798
- Shih-chia chai yang hsin lu**
 十駕齋養新錄 784
Shih-chia chuang 什家莊 115
shih-chiang hsüeh-shih 偕講學士
 (expositor-in-waiting) 742
Shih-chou 什州 115
shih-chung 侍中 (palace attendants)
 188
Shih Heng 什亨 328, 332, 333, 338,
 340–1, 342
 as Chung-kuo, duke of 340
Shih hsüeh ch'ing pao 史學情報 806
Shih-hui Hills [Shih-hui-
 shan] 什灰山 76
Shih kang p'ing yao 史綱評要
 758–9
Shih kang yao ling 史綱要領 759
Shih K'o-fa 史可法 641–2, 644–5,
 649, 651–3, 653 n14, 656–8,
 815
Shih-kuan 史館, *see* Bureau of
 Historiography
shih-kuan 史官 (historiographer)
 736
Shih Liu-ch'in lu 使琉球錄 774
shih-lu 實錄, *see* veritable records
Shih-miao 世廟, *see* Chu Hou-
 ts'ung
Shih miao shih yü lu 世廟識餘錄
 800–1
Shih-mo I-sun 什抹宜孫 71
Shih Piao 什彪 340
Shih-po ssu 市舶司 (Maritime Trade
 Intendancies) 169
shih-pu 史部 (division of history)
 727, 753
Shih P'u 什璞 332, 335, 339
Shih ts'ao yü lu 視草餘錄 800
Shih Tsun-li 施遵禮 28
Shih-tsung 世宗, *see* Chu Hou-
 ts'ung
Shih-tsung shih lu 世宗實錄 752
shih-tu 侍讀 (readers-in-waiting)
 742

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

952

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Shih-tzu Hill 獅子山, *see* Lu-lung Hill
- Shimazu 島津 clan 573, 700
- shipbuilding 36–7, 65, 69–70, 73–7, 82–8, 168, 232–7, 249–56, 288, 418, 711
see also foreign trade; grain, transport of; maritime activity; navy; transport systems
- ships, historical sources for 774, 777
- shipyards 756; *see also* Lung-chiang shipyard
- Shira Muren River, *see* Hsi-liao River
- Shiraz 失刺思 260; 224 map9
- shōgun 將軍 269, 300
- short stories, *see* storytelling
- shou* 壽 (long-lived) 422
- shou-chen ping* 守鎮兵 (garrison army) 176
- shou-fu* 首輔 (senior grand secretary) 210
- Shou-hsien 壽縣 67
- Shou-ning, earl of 壽寧伯, *see* Chang Luan
- Shou-ning, marquis of 壽寧侯, *see* Chang Ho-ling
- Shou-ning, marquis of 壽寧侯, *see* Chang Luan
- Shou-shan 首善 Academy 610
- shou-yü* 守禦 (independent battalions) 91
- shu* 疏 (document type) 767
- shu* 書 (letter) 728
- shu* 詠 (treatise) 757
- Shu, Prince of 蜀王, *see* Chu Ch'un
- shu chi-shih* 庶吉士 (highly ranked graduates, Hanlin bachelors) 152, 455 n17
- Shu chung kuang chi* 蜀中廣記 780
- Shu Liang 紹長 339
- Shu yü chou tzu lu* 殊域周咨錄 770
- shu-yüan* 書院 (academies) 779
- Shuang hsi tsa chi* 雙溪雜記 731
- Shuang-yü 雙嶼 491, 493, 494
- shui-li* 水利 (water-control works) 53
- Shun, Prince of 順王, *see* Li Tzu-ch'eng
- Shun-chih 順治 reign 181 n239, 652, 715, 716, 750, 808, 810
- Shun 順 reign, *see* Li Tzu-ch'eng
- Shun-te 順德 680
- Shun-ti 順帝 *see* Toghōn Temür
- Shun-t'ien 順天, *see* Peking
- shuo* 說 (expositions) 728
- Siam (Hsien-luo kuo) 166, 168 n178, 233, 568, 589, 770
Chinese migration to 711
 234 map11
see also foreign relations, with Siam
- Sian 西安 100, 116, 119, 399, 567
 and Chang Hsien-chung 701
 Ch'ing campaign against 656
 considered as possible site for capital 164
 and Li Tzu-ch'eng 636, 638, 639
 as princely estate 138, 171t
 19 map2, 121 map5, 224 map9,
 385 map18, 633 map27, 659
 map28
- Sikang 西康 701 n53
- silk
 as export product 587
 for imperial use 432, 589
 production of 366
 in tribute trade 232, 257, 261,
 264, 265, 267, 268, 272, 299,
 301, 317, 319, 505, 577, 700
- Silk Road 395, 452–3
- silver
 as bribe 548, 651, 668
 and expenses for war and defense 471, 474, 478, 485–9, 577–9,
 583, 589, 591, 631–2, 637, 671
 foreign sources of 588–9, 603–4,
 614–15, 627, 631

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

953

- in foreign trade 587–90
 for imperial use 348, 404–5, 407,
 416, 418, 420, 432, 485–9, 589
 mining of 133, 312–14, 407, 602
 in private hands 411, 521
 as redemption fee 565
 for relief 473, 487, 583
 reserves of 404–5, 420, 485–9,
 522–3
 as salary payment 250, 409, 468,
 488–9, 566–7, 637
 as tax payment 255, 281, 485–9,
 524–5, 588, 627
 in tribute trade 257, 261, 264,
 265, 268, 301, 319, 577, 700
 silver coins 478
 single assessment tax (*i t'iao pien fa*)
 489
 as single whip tax 289, 298, 525
 single whip tax, *see* single
 assessment tax
 Sinkiang 新疆 257, 317, 389, 393
 Six Dynasties 六朝 70
 “Six instructions” (*liu yü*) 179–81
 Six Men of Superior Virtue (*liu
 chün-tu*) 608
see also Tung-lin party; Wei
 Chung-hsien
 Siyanggiayan 尚圓崖 582; 578
 map25
 “small talk” (*hsiao-shuo*) [book
 classification category] 728
 snow, excessive 336–7, 580
see also natural disasters
 so 所 (battalions) 373
So chui lu 瑣綴錄, *see* Chien-chai so
 chui lu
 social distinctions as a Confucian
 value 535
 social order, imperial vision of
 180–1
 social strata 663
 societies
 literary 663, 810
 political 663, 810; *see also* Fu She;
 Tung-lin party
 secret 59, 65, 98, 663
 soil, spirits of
 sacrifices to (*she*) 137
see also altars of state
 soldiers, as laborers 239, 240, 246,
 251, 254, 297, 320, 374, 401,
 416, 475, 477
see also military affairs
 solstice, winter 422, 432, 513
 Somali 236
 Son of Heaven, *see* Heaven, Son of
 Soochow 蘇州 32, 585
 as Chang Shih-ch'eng's capital 47,
 64
 Ch'ing conquest of 660, 674
 economic decline of 632
 famine in 336
 historical sources for 730, 763,
 795, 807
 and Ming resistance 662
 Nanking compared with 70
 natural disasters in 310
 officials in 521
 and piracy 496, 499
 population of 123
 scholars from 731
 and taxation 190, 255–6, 281,
 294–8
 1366–67 siege of 34, 58, 92, 93–4
 uprising in 608
 197 map8, 253 map14, 311
 map15, 497 map23, 659 map28
 Sorai 祖來 128
 South America 711
 South Asia 301
 South China Sea 604, 614
 South Kan 南贛 (Southern Kiangsi
 around Kan-chou) 671–2
 South Seas, Cheng Ho's voyage to
 183, 232, 271, 282, 302, 303
 Southeast Asia 236
 Chinese migration to 8, 559

954

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Southeast Asia (*cont.*)
 sources for 770, 770 n131, 773, 792, 794, 795
 and trade with Macao 603
see also foreign relations, with Brunei; with Burma; with Cambodia; with Champa; with Java; with Siam
- Southern Metropolitan Region (*Nan Chihli*) 200, 247, 422
 administration of 296, 643
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 714, 717–21
 Ch'ing penetration of 653, 655, 661, 663
 and Chu Hou-chao 422
 defense of 200, 499, 644–5, 651
 economic prosperity in 588
 grain shipments to 605
 historical sources for 779
 natural disasters in 298 n200, 336–7, 604
 rebel activity in 504, 622–3, 629, 634
 and regent Lu 695
 ships from 251
 and 1642 Mongol campaigns 636–7
 and taxation 190, 281, 291, 645
 troops from 247
 429 map21, 431 map22, 624–5
 map26, 659 map28, 713 map31
- Southern Ming 1, 9
 historical sources for 757–8, 759, 807–15
 major discussion of: Chapter 11
 rulers during, *see* Chu Ch'ang-fang; Chu I-hai; Chu Yu-lang; Chu Yu-sung; Chu Yü-chien; Chu Yü-yüeh
- Southern Palace 330, 333
- Southern suburban altar, *see* *nan-chiao*
- Southern T'ang 南唐 dynasty 70
- Soviet Union 574
- Spain 559–62
see also foreign relations, with Spain
- spices 236, 271
- Spring and autumn annals* 595
- Square Mound, *see* altars of state, to Earth
- Srivijaya (San-fo-ch'i kuo) 166, 770
see also foreign relations, with Srivijaya
- ssu* 嗣 (blood line succession, succession by adoption) 444–5
- ssu-chen* 四鎮 (four defense commands) 644–5, 649
- SSu chen san kuan chih* 四鎮三關志 772
- Ssu Chi-fa* 思機發 315
- Ssu-ching chü* 司經局 (Library) 742
- Ssu-fu kuan* 四輔官 (Four Assisting Offices) 143, 148
- Ssu-i kuan* 四夷館 (College of Translators) 743
- Ssu i kuang chi* 四夷廣記 770
- Ssu Jen-fa* 思任發 (Thonganbwa) 146 n94, 314–15
- Ssu k'u ch'üan shu* 四庫全書 (Complete corpus in four treasures) 221, 812–13
- Ssu k'u ch'üan shu tsung mu t'i yao* 四庫全書總目題要 (Imperial catalogue) 728
- Ssu-li chien* 司禮監, *see* Directorate of Ceremonial
- Ssu Lun-fa* 思倫發 146, 157, 160
- Ssu-ma Kuang* 司馬光 760
- Ssu-ming* 思明 district, Kwangsi 229; 234 map11
- Ssu-ming* Hill 四明山 697–8
- Ssu-Ming* 思明 prefecture, Fukien, *see* Chung-tso-so
- Ssu Pu-fa* 思卜發 315
- Ssu pu pei yao* 四部備要 789
- Ssu shu ta ch'üan* 四書大全 729

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY – INDEX

955

- Ssu-tsung 思宗, *see* Chu Yu-chien
Ssu-wei ying 四衛營 (Camp of the Four Guards) 248
Ssu yu chai ts'ung shuo 四友齋叢說 766
 standard histories, *see* histories, standard
 state affairs, writings on (*ching-shih wen*, or *ching-chi wen*) 733
 state policy, to make (*ts'an kuo-cheng*) 187
 statutes, government (*chu-ssu chih-chang*) 737, 791
 stele 233, 546
 stipend, form of payment for military personnel 250
see also currency; grain; silver
 storytelling 710, 764
 and popular stories 764
 and short stories 9, 546, 564, 564 n29
see also drama; literature; novels
 strikes, labor 641
 studies (*k'ao*) [as section of histories] 757, 760
 Su, Prince of 肅王, *see* Chu Ying
 Su-chou 宿州, Anhwei 93, 200; 197 map8
 Su-huang 肅皇, *see* Chu Hou-ts'ung
 Su Kuan-sheng 蘇觀生 674
 Su-men-ta-la kuo 蘇門答刺國, *see* Sumatra
 Su-ning 肅寧 596
 Su Po-heng 蘇伯衡 161 n159
 Su-Sung 蘇松 (Soochow – Sung-chiang area) 662, 694
Su ts'ai hsiao tsuan 蘇材小纂 730, 763
 Su T'ung-ping 蘇同炳 797
 subprefectures (*chou*) 778
 succession, *see* blood line
 succession; succession by adoption; heir apparent
- succession, imperial, *see* imperial succession
 succession by adoption (*ssu*) 444–5
sui 歲 (measure of age) 305, 307, 521, 799
 Sui-chou 隋州 656
 Sui-te 綏德 400
 suicide
 by civilians 50
 by critics of the emperor 147, 162, 163
 by the emperor 612
 by eunuchs 307, 356, 613
 by generals 127, 173, 174
 by officials 179, 211, 495, 552, 583, 600, 608, 610, 613, 631, 634, 636, 637–8, 648, 657–8, 660, 679, 686, 691, 698, 704, 709
 by princes 146, 162, 436
 by rebels 9, 315, 341, 565, 567
 by scholars 733
 by women 94, 159, 181, 685, 712
 sulfur, in tribute trade 257
 Sumatra (Su-men-ta-la kuo, Sumudra) 168 n178, 233, 235–6, 271 n143; 302, 234 map11
 Sumudra, *see* Sumatra
 Sun 孫, consort, empress dowager (d. 1462), *see* Chu Chan-chi, consorts of
 Sun Cheng-jung 孫正容 786
 Sun Ch'eng-tsung 孫承宗 602, 606, 610, 617, 619
 Sun Chi-tsung 孫繼宗 374
 as Hui-ch'ang, marquis of 374
 Sun Ch'u'an-t'ing 孫傳庭 636
 Sun Ch'üan 孫權 101
 Sun K'o-k'uan 孫克寬 788
 Sun K'o-wang 孫可望 688–9, 702–6
 as Ch'in, Prince of 688–9, 703, 705
 and 1651–55 campaign 669

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

956

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Sun K'o-wang (*cont.*)
 map30
- Sun Lung 孫鑛 538
- Sun P'ei-yang 孫丕揚 542, 542 n10
- Sun Shen-hsing 孫慎行 599
- Sun Sui 孫燧 426–9
- Sun T'ang 孫鐸 341
- Sun Te-yai 孫德崖 62, 63, 69
- Sun Yüan-hua 孫允化 618
- Sunch'on [Sunch'ón] 順天 573, 569
 map24
- Sung 宋, Red Turban dynasty 52–3,
 59, 67–8, 69, 94
emperor of 31, 40, 47; *see also*
 Han Lin-erh
 end of 56
 historical sources for 787
 19 map2
- Sung-chiang 松江
 Ch'ing administration of 694
 historical sources for 795
 officials in 521
 and piracy 496
 population of 123
 and taxation 190, 255–6, 281,
 284–8
 253 map13, 497 map23
- Sung ch'uang meng yü 松窗夢語 766
- Sung 宋 dynasty
 capital of 660
 Central China during 384
 emperors during 508
 encyclopedias from 734
 eunuchs in 364
 fall of 1, 13, 109, 585
 genealogies from 781
 and grain production in
 Szechwan during 602
 Han Lin-erh as descendant of
 rulers of 31, 40, 42
 historical sources for 729, 733
 and literacy 727
 memorials from 734
- native chieftainships during 383
- philosophy during 218–20, 444,
 509, 535
- poetry during 727
- and the retreat south 326
- scholarship in 729
- system as source for historical
 precedent 16, 119, 124, 169,
 446
- Sung Li 宋禮 211, 239, 252
- Sung Lien 宋濂 54–5, 116, 120, 737,
 789
 advice on nobility of merit 124
 and Taoism 127
 as tutor of heir apparent 111, 164
 writings and compilations by 111,
 116, 132
- Sung Na 宋訥 151
- Sung Wen-hsien kung ch'üan chi
 宋文憲公全集 789
- Sung Ying-ch'ang 宋應昌 568
- Sung Ying-hsing 宋應星 777
- Sung Yüan hsüeh an 宋元學案 733
- Sungari River 松花江 130, 266
- Superintendency of the Office of
 Hydraulic Works (*Tu-shui*
ying-t'ien ssu) 53
- supervising secretaries (*chi-shih*
chung) 152, 518, 519, 525, 537,
 548–9
 for keeping audience records
(ch'i-chü chu chi-shih chung)
 737
- supplementary service review (*k'ao*
ch'a shih-i) 537–8, 539, 543
see also evaluations
- supreme commander (*tsung-tu*) 293,
 296, 630
- surveillance 74–7, 84, 141, 198,
 212–14, 366, 409, 412, 414,
 428, 466, 514, 548–50, 581,
 606, 612–13, 619–20
see also Chief Surveillance Office
- swords in tribute trade 300

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

957

- syncretism 147; *see also* neo-Confucianism; philosophy
- Syria 258; 224 map9
- Szechwan 四川 314, 585
as Branch Secretariat 127
and Chang Hsien-chung 630–1, 701
Ch'ing control in 705
and Chu Yün-wen's flight to 730
1512 banditry in 414, 418
as garrison 13
historical sources for 780
military affairs in 465
as Ming administrative unit 701
n53
as Ming Yü-chen's base 65, 72, 88, 108, 118
minority uprisings in 602, 610
officials in 292, 666, 677
and Po-chou 564
rebel activity in 336, 382, 622, 635, 651
silver mines in 407, 566
as source for horses 318
1371 Ming conquest of 58, 98, 100–1, 106, 125–7
timber from 238
treasury of 522
troops from 315, 572
war provisions from 577
126 map6, 624–5 map26
- ta chen-jen* 大眞人 (great perfected one) 114; *see also* Chang Cheng-ch'ang; Taoism
- Ta Ch'ing li ch'ao shih lu* 大清歷朝實錄 808
- Ta-ch'ing River 大清河 335; 197 map8
- Ta-chung Bridge 大中橋 155
- ta ch'üan* 大全 ("neo-Confucian syntheses," "great completes") 184, 219–20, 729 n7
- Ta-hsi k'ou 大溪口 126; 126 map6
- Ta hsüeh* 大學 (The Great Learning) 122, 220, 533
- ta hsüeh-shih* 大學上, *see* grand secretary
- Ta hsüeh yen i* 大學衍義 (Extended meanings of the Great Learning) 218
- Ta hsüeh yen i pu* 大學衍義補 798
- Ta-i 大義 41
- Ta kao* 大誥 (Grand pronouncements) 151, 754, 789
- Ta kao san pien* 大誥三編 (Third installment of the grand pronouncements) 151
- Ta-li 大理 144, 145, 314, 707; 145 map7, 696 map30
- Ta-li ssu* 大理寺, *see* Grand Court of Revision
- Ta-li ssu yu-ssu fu* 大理寺右司副 (assistant secretaries of the Grand Court of Revision) 743
- Ta-ling-ho ch'eng 大凌河城, *see* Talingho
- Ta-ling River 大凌河 171, 171t
- Ta Ming chi li* 大明集禮 (*Collected ceremonies of the Ming dynasty, Collected ceremonies*) 729, 754, 755
- Ta Ming hui tien* 大明會典 (*Collected statutes of the Ming dynasty, Collected statutes*) 729, 738, 741, 754, 755, 802
- Ta Ming i t'ung chih* 大明一統志 755
- Ta Ming jih li* 大明日曆 741, 753
- Ta Ming kuan chih ta ch'üan* 大明官制大全 769
- Ta Ming ling* 大明令 754
- Ta Ming lü* 大明律, *see* Great Ming code
- Ta Ming lü ling* 大明律令, *see* Great Ming code
- Ta-ning 大寧 129, 157, 171, 171t, 181, 222, 321

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

958

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Ta-ning (*cont.*)
 and the Prince of Ning 423
 121 map5, 390 map19
- Ta-pei 大悲 653–4
- Ta-pen Hall 大本堂 124
- Ta-pieh Mountains 大別山 666
- ta pu-ch'üan* 大不全 (“great incompletes”) 729 n7
- ta shen* 大審 (Great Review [of prisoners]) 367–8
- Ta-sheng Pass 大勝關 76
- ta ssu* 大祀 (major sacrifices) 137
- Ta ssu tien* 大祀殿, *see* Hall for the Great Sacrifice
- Ta-ta 鞑靼, *see* Tartar
- Ta-t'eng hsia [Ta T'eng-hsia] 大藤峽 1464–66 rebellion of 377–80, 386; 378 map17
- Ta-tu 大都, *see* Peking
- Ta tu-tu fu* 大都督府, *see* Chief Military Commission
- Ta-t'ung 大同 171, 171t, 328
 as border garrison 249, 321–5, 400, 407, 422, 520
 and Chu Ti 181, 198
 Esen attacks 328
 historical sources for 772, 800
 and Hsü Ta 129
 military affairs in 628
 Ming conquest of 115
 Mongolian raids on 472–3, 475–8
 and the Prince of Tai 436
 raids on 371
 revolts in 450–2, 468, 690
 as tea – horse market 317
 121 map5, 225 map10, 390 map19, 419 map20
- Ta t'ung li* 大統曆 (Calendar of the Great Unification) 108
- Ta-Yüan k'o-han 大元可汗 (Dayan-khan, Great King of the Great Yuan Dynasty), *see* Batü Möngke
- tables (*piao*) [section of official histories] 727, 757
- tables and registers (*p'u-hsi*) 781
- tael (*liang*, weight unit) xxi
- Tai, Prince of 代匄 (sixteenth century) 436, 452
- Tai, Prince of 代匄 (1374–1446), *see* Chu Kuei
- tai-chao* 待詔 (compiler of edicts) 743
- Tai Ming-shih 戴名世 811
- Tai-tsung 代宗, *see* Chu Ch'i-yü
- T'ai, Lake 太湖 79, 504, 539, 662, 670; 121 map5, 197 map8, 253 map14, 497 map23
- T'ai Bay 臺灣 723
- t'ai-ch'ang* 泰昌 (great peace and prosperity) 592
- T'ai-ch'ang 泰昌 reign, *see* Chu Ch'ang-lo
- T'ai-ch'ang ssu ch'ing* 太常寺卿 (ministers of the Court of Imperial Sacrifices) 742
- T'ai-chou 台州, Chekiang 36, 96, 310
 and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 718, 719
 and Ming loyalists 665, 675
 and piracy 494, 496
 19 map2, 497 map23, 659 map28, 696 map30
- T'ai-chou 泰州, Kiangsu 30, 93
- T'ai-ho 泰和 150
- t'ai-hou* 太后, *see* empresses dowager
- t'ai-huang t'ai-hou* 太皇太后 (grand empress dowager) 305
- T'ai-ling 泰陵, *see* Chu Yu-t'ang
- T'ai-miao* 太廟, *see* Ancestral Temple
- T'ai-ning 泰寧 commandery [T'ai-ning wei] 165, 178, 247, 265, 397
- T'ai-p'ing 太平 25, 32, 48, 69, 74–5, 79, 83; 19 map2

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

959

- T'ai-p'ing Gate 太平門 (of the Imperial Palace in Nanking) 151; 75 map3
- T'ai-p'ing hsing-kuo Monastery 太平興國寺 128
- T'ai-p'ing 太平 rebellion 37
- T'ai-p'ing wang 太平王 (Prince of the Era of Great Peace) 387
see also Ching-Hsiang rebellion; Liu T'ung
- t'ai-shang huang-ti* 太上皇帝 (retired emperor) 327; *see also* Chu Ch'i-chen
- t'ai-shih* 太師 (grand preceptor) 611
- T'ai-ts'ang 太倉, Kiangsu 169, 251, 296
- T'ai-ts'ang 太倉 treasury 404, 407, 420, 486, 522
- T'ai-tsu 太祖, *see* Chu Yüan-chang
- T'ai-tsu Kao huang ti shih lu* 太祖高皇帝實錄 786, 787
as *T'ai-tsu shih lu* 太祖實錄 215, 748, 750, 790
as *HWSL* (Hung-wu shih lu) 786
- T'ai-tsu shih lu* 太祖實錄, *see* *T'ai-tsu Kao huang ti shih lu*
- T'ai-tsu shih lu pien cheng* 太祖實錄辨證 748, 784
- T'ai-tsung 太宗, *see* Chu Ti
- T'ai-tsung 太宗, *see* Chu Yu-yüan
- T'ai-tsung shih lu* 太宗實錄 743, 746, 748–9, 790, 791
as *Ch'eng-tsu shih lu* 746
- T'ai-wan wen hsien ts'ung k'an* 臺灣文獻叢刊 814
- T'ai-yeh ch'ih 太夜池 744
- T'ai-yüan [Taiyuan] 太原 99, 113, 422
as border garrison 453
Ming conquest of 115
Mongol attacks on 473
as princely estate 120, 138, 171t 19 map2, 121 maps, 419 map20, 633 map27
- Taipei 臺北 806
- Taiwan 臺灣 806
and Cheng Ch'eng-kung 721–5
Chinese migration to 711
end of Japanese colonization of 814
1624 Dutch retreat to 603 497 map23, 713 map31
- Taiwan Strait 560–1, 603, 614, 722–3
- taiyisi* 太師 (chief of staff to Mongol leader) 399, 400
- Talingho 人凌河 617
- tallies (C. *k'an-ho*, J. *kangō*) 269
- tally system 168–9, 269–70, 318–19
- Tamerlane, *see* Timur
- Tamura Jitsuzō 田村實造 794, 795
- tan* 斤, 擔 (picul, capacity/weight unit) xxi, 60, 64, 174, 207, 310, 407, 409, 418, 422, 485, 488, 488 n27, 489
- T'an, Prince of 潘王, *see* Chu Tzu
- T'an Ch'ien 談遷 508, 751, 759, 789, 790, 806
- T'an Hsi-ssu 譚希思 759
- T'an Lun 譚綸 524
- tang* 黨 (party, clique, faction, gang) 532, 593
- tang-p'u* 當舖 (pawn shops) 588
- Tang-t'u 當涂 69
- T'ang, Prince of (fourteenth century) 唐王 121 maps
- T'ang, Prince of (1602–46) 唐王,
see Chu Yü-chien
- T'ang 唐 dynasty 230, 564
border defense in 7
Central China during 384
comparison with Ming military colonies 104
emperors during, and martial arts 439
emperors during, and Taoism 508
and empress Wu 594

- T'ang dynasty (*cont.*)
 encyclopedias in 734
 end of 585
 eunuchs in 364
 literacy in 727
 literature of 440, 441, 727
 as model for Tibetan rulers 262
 official histories of 762
 trade during 257
- T'ang Ho 湯和 69, 90, 92, 97, 99, 100, 101, 103, 112, 118, 119
 and conquest of Fukien 114
 death of 174
 retirement of 158–9
 in Szechwan campaign 125–7
 in Yen-an 130
- T'ang Hsien-tsu 湯顯祖 546
- T'ang hui-yao 唐會要 782
- T'ang lü shu i 唐律疏義 (T'ang code with commentary) 134
- T'ang-pao 嘉報 (*Metropolitan gazette*) 734–5
- T'ang Pin-yin 湯賓尹 542–3
- Taniguchi Kikuo 谷口喜之雄 806
- Tao-lu ssu 道錄司 (Central Taoist Registry) 146
- Tao te ching 道德經 134–5, 147, 154
- Tao-yen 道衍, *see* Yao Kuang-hsiao
- T'ao An 陶安 48, 50
- T'ao-chou 洲州 139, 318; 633 map27
- T'ao Chung-wen 陶仲文 480–2, 484, 506
- T'ao hua shan 桃花扇 (The peach blossom fan) 811
- T'ao K'ai 陶凱 124, 125, 132
- T'ao-nan 洲南 165
- T'ao Tsung-i 陶宗儀 26, 28
- Taoism
 and drugs 174, 272, 279–82
see also immortality, elixirs of
- Taoism
 in the Hung-wu reign 114, 120,
- 127, 146–7, 174, 789
 in the Chien-wen reign 184, 190–1
 in the Yung-lo reign 221
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 349–50
 in the Hung-chih reign 351, 353, 355–6
 in the Chia-ching reign 479–84, 505, 507–8
- Taoist Affairs Academy (*Hsüan-chiao yüan*) 114
- Taoist temples 26, 778, 779
- Taoists, biographies of 762
- Tarim Basin 257, 258; 224 map9
- taro root 723
- Tartar (Ta-ta) 316, 397–9, 722; *see also* Mongols, Eastern
- tax captains (*liang-chang*) 153, 154, 296
- tax quotas 255–6, 275–6, 294–8, 407, 409, 485–9, 524, 525, 526, 531, 626
- tax remissions 255–6, 294–8, 310–11, 356, 404, 473, 487, 511, 644, 645, 661
- taxation
 in the early Ch'ing 661
 in the late Yüan 11, 12, 30, 64
 records of 747, 756, 777, 778, 779, 780
- taxation 5–6, 7
 in the Hung-wu reign 50, 118, 135, 146, 153, 183, 190, 295
 in the Chien-wen reign 183–4, 189–91
 in the Yung-lo reign 231, 238, 250–6, 275–6, 295
 in the Hung-hsi reign 281
 in the Hsüan-te reign 291, 294–8
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 297, 309–12
 in the Ch'eng-hua reign 350, 388–9
 in the Hung-chih reign 356

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

961

- in the Cheng-te reign 405–10,
416, 424
in the Chia-ching reign 447, 465,
473, 485–9, 508–9
in the Wan-li reign 524–9, 530–
2, 535–6, 540, 545, 547, 554,
559–60, 561, 565, 576, 577,
583, 588–9, 590
in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 590–1
in the T'ien-ch'i reign 603–5
in the Ch'ung-chen reign 676–7,
632, 637
in the Southern Ming: in the
Hung-kuang reign 643–5, 650;
in the Lu regency 669–70; in
the Lung-wu reign 671–2;
under Cheng Ch'eng-kung on
Taiwan 724–5
te 德 (virtue) 403 n1
Te-chou 德州 113, 198–200; 197
map8, 253 map14
Te-hung 德宏 Autonomous Chou
314
Te-sheng 德勝 gate of Peking 328;
240 map12
Te-sheng 德勝 reign, *see* Liu T'ung
tea 133, 179, 278, 317–19, 471
tea – horse markets, *see* Ho-chou;
horse markets; horses; Hsi-
ning; T'ao-chou
technology, historical sources for
777
Temple of Heaven 361; *see also*
altars of state, to Heaven; ritual
sacrifice, to Heaven
Temple of Imperial Filial Piety
(*Ch'in-hsien hsiao-ssu tien*) 124
temples 366, 368, 485, 627, 643
historical sources on 755
see also altars of state; Ancestral
Temple; Buddhist temples;
Taoist temples
Ten kingdoms period 70
tenant farmers 44, 183, 312–14,
626, 632, 641, 662, 663, 672
Teng-chou 德州 617–18
Teng Mao-ch'i 鄧茂七 312–14
as *Min wang*, Fukien, King of
313
Teng Mao-pa 鄧茂八 312–14
Teng Po-sun 鄧伯孫 313–14
Teng Ssu-yü 鄧嗣禹 767 n127, 785
Teng t'an pi chiu 登壇必究 771
Teng Yü 鄧愈 71, 78, 79, 81, 84, 89,
90, 97, 100, 101, 119, 385
ennobled 124
and 1371 Szechuan campaign
125
and Tibetan campaign 130
Teng Yuan-hsi 鄧元錫 757
T'eng-ch'ung 騰衝 146; 145 map7
t'eng-lu 騰錄 (copyists) 742
T'eng-yüeh 騰越 707–8
Terada Takanobu 寺田隆信 794
textiles 404
imperial requisitions of 465
production of 508, 509
in tribute trade 260, 261, 264,
318, 319
see also brocade; cotton;
embroidery; silk
textual analysis 449–50
Thailand, *see* Siam
Thanh-hoá 淸化 231
theater, *see* drama
“third frontier” 772, 772 n139; *see*
also maritime activity
Thonganbwa, *see* Ssu Jen-fa
Three Commanderies (*san wei*) 222,
265, 397–8
see also Do-en; Fu-yü; T'ai-ning
commandery
three great camps (*san ta-ying*)
247–8, 334
three great cases (*san ta-an*) 609; *see*
also Attack with the Club case;
Change of Palace Case; Red
Pill Case

- three judicial agencies (*san fa-ssu*) 367–70
see also Censorate; Grand Court of Revision; Ministry of Justice
- “three loyalists of Kwangtung” 680–1, 683
see also Chang Chia-yü; Ch'en Pang-yen; Ch'en Tzu-chuang
- three major campaigns (*san ta-cheng*) 563–74, 577
see also Korea, and campaigns; Ordos campaign; Po-chou campaign
- three provincial offices (*san-ssu*) 292
see also Provincial Surveillance Offices; Regional Military Commission
- “three suspicious cases” in the Southern Ming 653–5
- Three Yangs 284, 286, 288, 303–4, 306, 333, 358, 367, 791, 792, 793
see also Yang Jung; Yang P'u; Yang Shih-ch'i
- thunderbolt, *see* lightning
- Ti hsüeh* 帝學 (Learning of the emperors) 2, 8
- Ti hsün* 帝訓 (Imperial injunctions) 303
- Ti-kang 荻港 657
- ti-li* 地理 (geography) 728, 766
- Ti-pao* 邃報 (*Metropolitan gazette*) 734; *see also* *T'ang pao*
- Ti-pao-nu* 地保奴 159
- ti-shih* 帝師 (viceroy) 261
- t'i-kao* 題稿 (memorials) 738
- t'i-pen* 題本 (official memorials) 767
- Tiao-hsiao 299 n202 鶲鴟
- t'iao-chih* 條旨 (process for reviewing memorials) 287
- t'iao-li* 條例 (judicial regulations) 769
- T'iao-lu t'ang chi* 條籙堂集 739 n44
- Tibet 400, 770
- 1470s uprising in 383
- lamas from 417–18
- 1377 Ming campaign against 130 troops from 557
- 224 map9
see also foreign relations, with Tibet
- Tibetans 383, 400
- Tibeto-Burman people 143–6, 389, 557–8, 589, 709
- T'ieh-ling* 鐵嶺 582–3; 578 map25
- Tien ku chi wen* 典故紀聞 802
- tien-pu* 典簿 (archivist) 736
- t'ien-ch'i* 天啓 (opening [of the ruler's way] by heaven) 595
- T'ien-ch'i* 天啓 reign, *see* Chu Yu-chiao
- T'ien-chieh* Monastery 天界寺 128
- T'ien* 田 family 565
- T'ien Feng* 田豐 21, 22
- T'ien hsia chün kuo li ping shu* 天下郡國利病書 735
- T'ien huang yü tieh* 天潢玉牒 215–16
- T'ien I-heng* 田藝衡 766
- T'ien Ju-ch'eng* 田汝成 772
- T'ien kung k'ai wu* 天工開物 777
- T'ien-pao-nu* 天保奴 159
- T'ien-shan* Mountains [*T'ien* Mountains] 天山 472; 224 map9
- t'ien-shen* 天神 (spirit of Heaven) 406
- t'ien-shih* 天師 (celestial master) 114
- T'ien-shun* 天順 reign, *see* Chu Ch'i-chen
- T'ien-t'ai* 天臺 sect 128
- T'ien-wan* 天完 dynasty 40–1, 61, 64–6, 69, 79–80; 19 map2
 Hsü Shou-hui as emperor of 31, 47–8, 74
- T'ien-yu* 天祐 reign 31
- Tientsin 天津 251, 253 map14

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

963

- Manchu attack of 629
as port city 573
tiger
 Chu Hou-chao mauled by 415–16
 figurative use of, in partisan politics 687 n41, 691
“Tiger Five” 687, 687 n41, 691
 see also Chin Pao; Liu Hsiang-k’o; Meng Cheng-fa; Ting Shih-k’uei; Yüan P’eng-nien
timber 231, 239, 281; *see also* logging
Timur 帖木兒 223, 232, 257–9
 as Tamerlane 223
Timurid empire 256; 224 map9
 see also foreign relations, with the Timurid empire
Ting, Prince of 定王, *see* Chu Tz’u-ts’an
Ting-hai 定海 698, 719; 696 map30
Ting-hsi 定西 100, 119
Ting K’uei-ch’u 丁魁楚 676, 677
Ting P’u-lang 丁普郎 78
Ting Shih-k’uei 丁時魁 687, 691
Ting-t’ao 定陶, Prince of 444
ting-ts’e 定策 (setting the plan) 648
Ting-yüan 定遠 46, 48, 68, 107, 113, 138
T’ing-chou 汀州 676; 659 map28
To-lun 多倫, *see* Dolon
to-men 奪門 (to force the palace gate) 338–9
Toghoci 脫火赤 206
 as Hsüeh Kuei 206
Toghon 脫懽 (son of Mahmūd) 299, 317
Toghōn Temür 妥懽貼睦爾 12–13, 22, 58–66, 95, 97, 100, 108, 113, 116, 117, 119–20
 as Hui-ti 12
 as Shun-ti 12, 123
Toghontai 脫懽台 206
 as Hsüeh Pin 206
Toghto 托克托 (adopted son of Altan) 476
Toghto 脫脫 (son of Majartai) 16, 20, 31–2, 59–60, 62, 63, 67
Toghto Bukha 脫脫不花 322, 329, 466
Toghus Temür 脫忽思帖木兒 103, 139, 140, 159
Tokugawa 德川 631, 699–700
Tonkin, Gulf of 東京灣 692
topically arranged style (*chi-shih pen-mo*) [of historical writing] 727, 756–60, 798
Toronto 585
Törebeg 脫烈伯 23
tou 斗 (capacity/weight unit) xxi
touring pacifier (*hsün-fu*) 292; *see also* grand coordinator
Tōyōshi kenkyū 東洋史研究 789
Toyotomi Hideyoshi 豊臣秀吉 558, 563, 567–76
trade 1–2, 8, 489, 490–510, 530–2, 587–90, 614–15, 645, 650, 661, 680, 698, 699–701, 722
Ch’ing prohibitions on 718
historical sources for 802
 see also foreign trade; tributary relations
Trân Cao 陳高 290
Trân 陳 dynasty 229–31, 290–1
Trân Nguy 陳危 230–1
Trân Quí-khoáng 陳季擴 231
Trân Thiên-bính 陳添(天)本 230
transmission of documents 287–8, 365–6
 see also memorials; Office of Transmission; rescripts
Transoxania 256, 258, 393; 224 map9
transport, civilian (*min-yün*) 254
transport, relay (*chih-yün*) 254
transport, transfer (*tui-yün*) 254
transport systems 249–56, 275, 641, 643, 652, 658, 671–2

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

964

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- transport systems (*cont.*)
 historical sources for 756, 772,
 776, 778
see also grain, transport of;
 Grand Canal; Yangtze River;
 Yellow River
- travel
 historical sources on 776
 prohibitions on 700
 records of 735
see also place, essays on
- treasure ship (*pao-ch'uan*) 232
- treasuries
 emperor's personal 232, 345, 405,
 411, 416, 486, 514, 553–4, 579,
 583, 589, 590–1, 650
 imperial 404, 407, 409, 478, 486,
 522–6, 527, 577–9, 583, 639
 ministerial 405
 provincial 486, 487, 489, 495, 522
see also T'ai-ts'ang treasury
- treatises (*chih*) [type of writing] 728
- treatises (*shu*) [section of histories]
 757
- Tribunal of Censors (*Yü-shih t'ai*)
 139–41
- tributary relations 2, 183, 226, 229,
 366, 747
 in the Hung-wu reign 155, 165–
 7, 168–9, 708
 in the Yung-lo reign 223–3, 232–
 6, 256–72, 302, 708
 in the Hsüan-te reign 288–91,
 298–303
 in the Cheng-t'ung reign 315,
 317–19, 322, 329–30, 797
 in the Ch'eng hua reign 391–7
 in the Cheng-te reign 434
 in the Chia-ching reign 470–1,
 473, 491–510
 in the Wan-li reign 558–62, 567–
 74, 575, 576, 577
 in the Southern Ming: in the
 Hung-kuang reign 652–3
- troop purification (*ch'ing-chün*) 294
- tsa-chia* 雜家 (miscellaneous
 schools) 728, 763
- tsa-shih* 雜史 (miscellaneous
 histories) 727, 764
- tsai-ch'ao* 在朝 ([of officials] in
 active service at court) 756–7
- tsai-yeh* 在野 ([of officials] at their
 country homes, “in the
 wilderness”) 756–7
- Ts'ai Chiu-te 采九德 801
- Ts'ai Hsin 禮信 241
- Ts'ai-shih 采仕 69, 70, 74
- ts'an-chiang* 參將 (local
 commander) 249
- ts'an kuo-cheng* 參國政 (to make
 state policy) 187
- ts'an-li chün-wu* 參理軍務
 (concurrent associate in
 military affairs) 293
- Tsang Hsien 嶽賢 424
- Ts'ang shu* 藏書 552 n17, 730, 732–
 3, 763
- Ts'ao Chi-hsiang 曹吉祥 316, 332,
 333, 338–42
- Ts'ao Ch'in 曹欽 340, 341, 342
- Ts'ao Hsüeh-ch'üan 曹學佺 780
- Ts'ao Nai 曹鼐 308, 325
- Ts'ao Ts'ao 曹操 70
- Ts'ao Wen-chao 曹文詔 622
- ts'ao-wu* 草屋 (thatched cottage)
 123
- Ts'ao Yü-pien 曹于泮 619
- Tse-chou 漳州 153
- ts'e* 策 (political analysis essay)
 [required part of civil service
 examination] 122
- ts'e* 策 (type of report) 767
- ts'e* 冊 (volume; section of a work)
 729, 747
- ts'e-wen* 策文 (patents) 733
- tsei* 賊 (bandit) 29
- Tseng 曾, empress, *see* Chu Yü-
 chien, consorts of

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

965

- Tseng-ch'eng 增城 681
 Tseng Ching 曾靜 811
 Tseng Hsien 曾銑 474–5
 Tsinghai 清海 130, 318–19
 Tso Chün-pi 左君弼 65, 69, 83, 89
Tso commentary 左傳 595
 Tso Kuang-tou 左光斗 594, 596–7,
 606, 607–8, 619
 Tso Liang-yü 左良玉 635, 645, 649,
 655–8, 681, 684, 686
 Tso Mao-ti 左懋第 652
 Tsong-kha-pa 263
 Tsou Chi 鄒緝 241
tsou-i 奏議 (personal memorials) 767
tsou-pen 奏本 (personal memorials) 767
 Tsou P'u-sheng 鄒普勝 40, 65, 66
tsou-shu 奏疏 (personal memorials) 767
 Tsou Yüan-piao 鄒允標 536, 545,
 592–3, 598, 599, 610
tsu 祖 (progenitor) 273, 460
Tsu hsün 祖訓, see *Ancestral injunctions*
Tsu hsün lu 祖訓錄, see *Ancestral injunctions*
tsu-p'u 族譜 (family or clan genealogies) 781
 Tsu-shan 祖闡 128
 Tsu Ta-shou 祖人壽 617, 636
tsuan-hsiu 纂修 (compiling officers) 742
tsuan-hsiu kuan 纂修官 (compiling officers) 742
Tsui wei lu 罪惟錄 757, 786
 Ts'ui Ch'eng-hsiu 崔呈秀 609, 611,
 612–13
 Ts'ui Chih-tuan 崔知端 356
 Ts'ui Liang 崔亮 119
ts'ui-tsuau 崔纂 (overseers) 742, 744
 Tsukamoto Shunko 塚本俊孝 789
 Tsun-hua 遵化 616
 Tsun-i 遵義 702
ts'un 尺 (length unit) xxi
tsung 宗 (ancestor) 273
Tsung fan chao chien lu 宗藩昭鑒錄
 (Bright mirror for the feudatories of the imperial clan) 132
tsung-kuan fu 總管府 (field headquarters) 91
tsung-li 總理 (supreme commander) 630
 Tsung-lo 宗泐 128, 139, 148
tsung ping-kuan 總兵官 (regional commanders) 249
tsung-p'u 宗譜 (family or clan genealogies) 781
tsung-ts'ai 總裁 (supervisors of compilation) 741, 742
tsung-tu 總督 (supreme commander, to supervise) 293, 296
Ts'ung seng po tao huang ch'üan
 從僧鉢到皇權, see *Chu Yüan-chang chuan*
ts'ung-shu 叢書 (collectanea) 759, 813
 Tu, the madman, see *Tu Sung*
Tu'ch'a yüan 都察院 (Chief Surveillance Office), see Censorate
tu chih-hui 都指揮 (regional military commissioner) 566
Tu chih-hui shih ssu 都指揮使司 (Regional Military Commissions) 105
 Tu Nai-chi 杜乃濟 794, 795
 Tu-shih k'ou [Tu-shih-k'ou] 獨石口 299 n200, 321; 225 map 10
 “Tu shih niang nu ch'en pai pao
 hsiang” 杜士娘怨沈百寶箱 564 n29
Tu-shui ying-t'ien ssu 督水營田司 (Superintendency of the Office for Hydraulic Works) 53
Tu-ssu 都司, see Regional Military

- Tu-ssu* (cont.)
 Commission; *Tu chih-hui shih ssu*
tu-ssu 都司 (military commissioner) 177, 393
Tu Sung 杜松 576, 581–2
 and offensive against Nurhaci 578 map25
 as *Tu*, the madman 576
 “*Tu Ta kao tso hsiang ko*”
 讀大誥作巷歌 (Village song about reading the Grand pronouncements) 155–6
Tu-wei 都衛 (Chief Guard) 105
tu-wei chih-hui shih 都衛指揮使 (commanders of the chief guards) 105
Tu Wei-yün 杜維運 784
Tu Yin-hsi 塚胤錫 686, 689
T'u Chieh 涂節 139–41
T'u Hsün 屠勳 354
T'u-mu 土木 228
 1449 incident of 294, 319, 322–31, 333, 334, 339, 360, 389, 796
 225 map10, 323 map16
T'u-mu chih pien 土木之變 (the *T'u-mu* crisis) 330–1
t'u-ping 土兵 (local troops) 374
T'u Shu-fang 塚叔方 791
T'u shu pien 圖書編 775
t'u-ssu 土司 (native chieftain, native chieftainships) 146, 383, 702
t'u-Ta 土靼 (native Tartars) 399
Tuan 段, surname 144–6
T'uan-shan 團山 229 n202
t'uan-ying 團營 (drill units) 334
Tugh Temür 圖帖睦爾 12, 16, 17
 as Huai, Prince of 16
 as Wen-tsung 12, 16, 17
tui-yün 兌運 (transfer transport) 254
Tula River 土刺河 102, 128, 227;
 225 map10
Tumen River 圖門江 568
- Tun-huang* 敦煌 103
t'un-t'ien 屯田, *see* military colonies
Tunci 屯齊 705
Tung-ch'ang 東廠, *see* Eastern Depot
Tung-ch'ang 東昌, Shantung 97, 112, 199; 197 map8
Tung Ch'i-ch'ang 董其昌 546
Tung-ch'uan 東川 157, 160; 145 map7
Tung-hai 東海 312
Tung hsi yang k'ao 東西洋考 773
Tung-ko 東閣 (Eastern Hall) 740
Tung-kuan 東莞 680
Tung-kung 東宮 (Eastern Palace) 111
Tung-lin 東林 Academy (*Tung-lin shu-yüan*) 532–40, 592–3, 610
Tung-lin 東林 movement 592–601, 609, 611, 613–14, 618–19, 627–8, 634, 634 n154, 642, 646–9
 sources for 807
 1623–6 debacle of 605–8, 620
Tung-lin party 東林黨 532–56, 749–51, 755
Tung-lin shu-yüan 東林書院, *see* Tung-lin Academy
Tung-sheng 東勝 228, 321; 225 map10, 390 map19
Tung-t'ing Lake 洞庭湖 682; 121 maps, 385 map18
t'ung 統 (legitimate succession in the dynastic line) 444–5
T'ung 童, Madame 654, 657
T'ung-cheng ssu 通政司, *see* Office of Transmission
T'ung-ch'eng hsien 桐城縣 623–6, 634, 807
T'ung chi hui tsuan 通紀會纂 758
T'ung chien chi shih pen mo 通鑑紀事本末 727, 759
T'ung chien kang mu 通鑑綱目 729, 733

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

967

- T'ung chien Ming chi ch'üan tsai chi lüeh* 通鑒明紀全載輯略 759
- t'ung-chih* 通志 (provincial gazetteers) 727
- T'ung-chou* 通州 113, 157, 251, 413, 435, 436, 446, 475, 496
and defense of Peking 637
1512 banditry in 413
granary at 327
253 map14, 431 map22, 497
map23
- T'ung-hsiang* 桐鄉 500; 497 map23
- T'ung-lu* 桐廬 675
- T'ung Pass* 灊關 67, 96, 97, 113, 636, 656, 657; 633 map27
- T'ung shih* 痛史 (Histories of pain) .814
- T'ung tien* 通典 727
- T'ung Yang-chia* 佟養甲 679–80, 685
- Turfan 土魯番 (吐魯番, 土爾番) 223, 393, 394, 452–3; 224
map9
see also foreign relations, with Turfan
- Turkestan 393, 394
- Tümed Mongols 土默特部 397, 398
- typhoon and Cheng Ch'eng-kung's fleet 719
- Tzu chih t'ung chien* 資治通鑑 727, 760
- Tzu chih t'ung chien kang mu* 資治通鑑綱目 753
- Tzu-chin shan* 紫金山
as Purple Mountain 70, 75
as Chung-shan 111, 114–15
- Tzu-ching Pass* 紫荊關 323, 328, 772; 323 map16
- tzu-pu* 子部 (division of noncanonical writers or philosophers) 728, 763–6
- Tz'u-sheng* 慈聖, empress dowager, *see* Chu Tsai-hou, consorts of
- Uighur[s] 維吾爾族 257, 389, 393–5, 557
- Ulsan 蔚山 573; 569 map24
- Ulugh Beg 259, 260
- unofficial histories, *see* histories, nonofficial/unofficial
- “upright” camp 642; *see also* “pure element”; “righteous” leaders; Tung-lin party
- Uriyangkhan 兀良哈 165, 178, 196, 222, 223–4, 227, 264–6, 299, 316ff, 322, 397, 423, 467, 770
- Uriyangkhan Commandaries, *see* Three Commandaries
- Urumchi 烏魯木齊 258
- usher (*hsü-pan*) [in the Court of State Ceremonial] 743
- Ussuri River 烏蘇里江 266
- usurpation, Chu Yüan-chang's fear of 4
see also Chu Ti, usurpation of usury 521
- vacancies in the bureaucracy 517, 520, 541, 543, 552, 553–4, 592
- vagrants 309–12
- Valignano, Alessandro 562
- veritable records (*shih-lu*) 116, 215, 609, 650, 731, 736–56, 758, 759, 761, 767, 770, 786, 789, 790, 791, 795, 796, 798, 799, 800, 806, 808
in the Hung-wu reign 177, 217, 786, 789, 790
in the Chien-wen reign 790
in the Yung-lo reign 265, 791, 792
in the Hung-hsi reign 792
in the Hsüan-te reign 792
in the Cheng-t'ung reign 306–7, 796
in the Ching-t'ai reign 796
in the T'ien-shun reign 796
in the Ch'eng-hua reign 799
in the Hung-chih reign 355, 799

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

968

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- veritable records (*cont.*)
 in the Chia-ching reign 738, 800,
 801, 802
 in the Lung-ch'ing reign 738
 in the Wan-li reign 517, 536
 in the T'ai-ch'ang reign 609, 613,
 806
 in the T'ien-ch'i reign 806
 in the Ch'ung-chen reign 806
- Veritable records of the Ming dynasty*, see *Ming shih lu*
- vernacular Chinese and Chu Yüan-chang 155–6, 159–60
- viceroy (*ti-shih*) 261
- Vietnam 106, 229, 716
 and attacks on Yunnan 557–8
 on China's border 8
 as Dai Viêt 230
see also Annam
- vinaya 128
- virtue (*te*) 403 n1
- volume (*ts'e*) 729
- Wada Sei 和田清 787
- wai pien* 外編 (outer compendium) 812
- wai-shih* 外史 (unofficial histories) 808
- wakō* 倭寇 (Japanese pirates), see *wo-k'ou*
- walls, long (*ch'ang-ch'eng*) 389, 397, 401–2, 474
see also city walls; Great Wall
- Wan 萬, lady, see Chu Chien-shen, consorts of
- Wan An 萬安 351, 362
- Wan Ching 萬暉 607
- Wan-ch'üan 萬全 227, 321; 225 map 10
- Wan-li k'uai chi lu* 萬曆會計錄 (Record of the accounting procedures of the Wan-li reign) 535, 756
- Wan-li 萬曆 reign, see Chu I-chün
- Wan-li wu kung lu* 萬曆武功錄 801
- Wan-li yeh huo pien* 萬曆野獲編 800, 801
 as *Yeh huo pien* 764–5, 800
- Wan Ming shih chi k'ao* 晚明史籍考 805, 808, 814
- Wan Piao 萬表 768
- Wan Yen 萬言 759
- wang* 王 (prince or king) 46, 223, 393
- Wang 王, consort (d. 1420) *see* Chu Ti, consorts of
- Wang 王, consort (d. 1611), *see* Chu I-chün, consorts of
- Wang 王, consort (d. 1619), *see* Chu Ch'ang-lo, consorts of
- Wang 汪, empress (d. 1507), *see* Chu Ch'i-yü, consorts of
- Wang 王, empress (d. 1518), *see* Chu Chien-shen, consorts of
- Wang 王, empress (d. 1620), *see* Chu I-chün, consorts of
- Wang 王, empress *see* Chu Yu-lang, consorts of
- Wang 王, empress dowager, *see* Chu Ch'ang-ying, consorts of
- Wang 王, surname 22
- Wang An 王安 596–8
- Wang Ao 王翫 (1384–1467) 332, 336, 340, 341
- Wang Ao 王鑒 (1450–1524) 751
- Wang Chen 王振 306–9, 315–16, 332, 341, 349, 360, 367
- T's'ao Chi-hsian compared with 338
 and the T'u-mu incident 322–6, 333
- Wang Ch'eng 王誠 339
- Wang Chi 王冀 308, 315, 340
- Wang-chi tien* 翁祭殿, *see* Hall for Watching the Sacrifice
- Wang Ch'i 王圻 734, 769, 775
- Wang Chia-p'ing 王家屏 529
- Wang Chih 王直 (1379–1462) 326,

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

969

- 332, 339, 349–50, 366, 371, 374
Wang Chih 王（汪）直 (fl. 1545, d. 1559) 493–504, 801
Wang Chih-chuan 汪直傳 801
Wang Chih-ming 王之明 654
Wang Chih-ts'ai 王之策 551–6
Wang Chin 王璉 306–8, 339
Wang-ching 王京, *see* Seoul
Wang Ching-hung 王景弘, *see* Wang Kuei-t'ung
Wang Ch'iung 王瓊 437, 445, 456, 771
Wang Ch'ung-ku 王崇古 520
Wang Ch'ung-wu 王崇武 784–5, 788, 789, 790, 793, 794, 795
wang-fu 王府 (princely establishments) 177
Wang Gungwu 王庚武 795
Wang Hao 汪浩 383
Wang Hsi-chüeh 王錫爵 516, 529, 536, 538, 746
Wang Hsin-i 王心一 598
Wang Hua-chen 王化貞 601–2
Wang Hui 王徽 369
Wang Hung 王竑 378–9
Wang Hung-hsü 王鴻緒 202
Wang I 王翊 697–8
Wang I-t'ung 王伊同 795
Wang Ken 王艮 551
Wang Kuang-yang 汪廣洋 112, 138, 140–1
Wang Kuei-t'ung 王貴通 278
as **Wang Ching-hung** 232–3, 278, 302
Wang Kuo-kuang 王國光 523
Wang Ming-ho 王鳴鶴 771
Wang Pao-pao 王保保, *see* Kökö Temür
Wang Pi 王弼 161, 173–4
Wang Shan 王山 308
Wang Shih-chen 王世貞 (1526–90) 546, 731–2, 760, 763, 766, 769, 781, 800, 801
Wang Shih-ch'eng 王士誠 21, 22
Wang Shou-jen 王守仁 372, 429–35, 448, 450
philosophy of 551–2
and the Prince of Ning's rebellion 429–35; 429 map 21
as **Wang Yang-ming** 372, 730
Wang Shu 王恕 356, 370, 386
Wang Te-jen 王得仁 684, 686
Wang Tsai-chin 王在晉 772, 774
Wang Tso 王佐 206
Wang T'u 王圖 542–3, 542 n10
Wang T'ung 王通 289–90
Wang Wang-kao 王望高 560
Wang Wei 王禕 116, 143–4
Wang Wen 王文 332, 339, 340
Wang Wen-yen 汪文言 607–8
Wang Yang-ming 王陽明, *see* Wang Shou-jen
Wang Yao 王瑤 165
Wang Yu 王祐 308
Wang Yü 王翊 496
Wang Yü-ch'üan 王毓銓 794, 797, 802
Wang Yüeh 王越 372, 400–1
warden's office 239–40
warehouses 296; *see also* granaries
Washington, D.C. 585
water as a basic element 403 n1
Way of the Minister as defined by Chu Ti 219
Way of the Ruler as defined by Chu Ti 218–19
weapons 106, 198, 199, 366, 411, 426, 700
see also artillery; cannons; crossbows; firearms; gunpowder; rockets
weddings 589, 650
wei 衛, *see* garrisons
wei chih-hui 衛指揮 (guard commander) 393
Wei Ch'ing-yüan 衛慶遠 788
Wei-chou 韋州 171, 171 t
Wei Chung-hsien 魏忠賢 596–9,

- Wei Chung-hsien (*cont.*)
 601–2, 606–7, 619, 647, 749,
 751
 major discussion of 608–14
 as *shang-kung* 609
 sources for 807
- Wei Huan 魏煥 772
- Wei Kuan 魏觀 737
- Wei Kuang-wei 魏廣微 606, 611
- Wei-nan 渭南 310
- Wei-ning 威寧 144
- Wei Pin 魏彬 412, 438
- Wei River 渭河 94, 99, 117, 252, 478,
 622; 121 map5, 197 map8, 253
 map14, 385 map18
- wei-so* 衛所 (basic military unit,
 guard and battalion units) 104,
 207, 248, 249, 319–31 *passim*,
 374–5
- Wei Su 危素 115
- wei ta pu tiao* 尾大不掉 (a great tail
 that cannot be moved about)
 175
- Wei Yün-chen 魏允貞 534
- weights and measures, xxi
- Wen-an 文安 413
- Wen Chen-meng 文震孟 620
- wen-chi* 文集 (collected writings)
 728, 761
- Wen-chou 溫州, Chekiang 36, 96,
 409, 697, 719; 19 map2, 497
 map23, 696 map30
- Wen-chou 文州, Shensi 125; 126
 map6
- Wen Ch'un 溫純 541, 549
- Wen-hsien 文縣, Kansu 125
- Wen hsien ta ch'eng* 文獻大成
 (Complete collection of
 literature) 220
- Wen hsien t'ung k'ao* 文獻通考 727,
 769
- Wen hsing t'iao li* 問刑條例 352
- Wen-hua Gate 文華門, of the Wen-
 hua Palace 555
- Wen-hua Palace 文華殿 351, 449,
 594; 243 map13
- Wen Huang 文皇, *see* Chu Yüan-
 chang
- Wen huang-ti 文皇帝, *see* Chu Ti
- Wen hui pao* 文匯報 815 n31
- Wen Jui-lin 溫睿臨 811
- Wen-ssu yüan* 文淵院 (Crafts
 Institute) 348
- Wen T'i-jen 溫體仁 614, 618–21,
 627–8
- Wen-tsung 文宗, *see* Tugh Temür
- Wen-yüan Hall 文淵閣 209, 740
- Weng Wan-ta 翁萬達 474–5
- West Ocean, Western Oceans (Hsi-
 yang kuo) 168 n178, 232
see also foreign relations, with
 West Ocean states
- Western Depot (*Hsi-ch'ang*) 349,
 352, 366
- Western Palace 181, 239
- wheat 473
- White Lotus Sect/Society (*Pai-lien*
 chiao) 39–40, 43, 61, 62, 64,
 122, 557, 590, 604–5
- Wild Jurchen 266–7; *see also*
 Jurchen
- wine
 and Chu Hou-chao 432
 taxation of 650
- Wo 倭 128; *see also* *wo-k'ou*
- wo-k'ou* 倭寇 (Japanese pirates, J.
 wakō) 300; 497 map23
- Wo pein shih lieh* 倭變事略 801
- women 418, 422
 as bandits 381–2
 biographies of 762, 778, 789
 in the imperial household 131,
 273–4, 306, 344–51, 414, 433,
 440, 461–5, 594–9; *see also*
 names of emperors, consorts of
 sale of 651
 as tribute gifts 268–9, 301
- wood, as basic element 403 n1

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

971

- wrestling 404, 405
- Wu** 吳, consort, *see* Chu Chan-chi, consorts of
- Wu**, duke of 吳公, *see* Chu Yüan-chang
- Wu** 武, empress (T'ang dynasty) 594–5
- Wu**, King 武王 371, 440 n1, 509
- Wu** 吳, lady, empress, *see* Chu Chien-shen, consorts of
- Wu**, Prince of 吳王, *see* Chang Shih-ch'eng
- Wu**, Prince of 吳王, *see* Chu Yüan-chang
- Wu** 吳, Red Turban dynasty 66, 71, 72, 74, 78, 79
Ming vs. Wu struggle 88–94, 96
- Wu** 吴 calendar 56
- Wu-ch'ang** 武昌 158
and Chang Hsien-chung 634–5
Ch'ing attacks on 657, 658
1512 bandits in 413
and the Ming–Han war 78, 79, 81, 82, 87, 89, 92
as princely estate 161, 171; 121 maps
and Red Turban activity 40, 41, 61
19 map2, 121 maps, 385 map18, 659 map28
- Wu Chen** 吳禎 102, 168
- Wu ch'en ta kao** 武臣大誥 (Grand pronouncements to the military officers) 159–60
- Wu Ch'eng-en** 吳承恩 546
- Wu Chi-hua** 吳緝華 794, 795, 797
- Wu Chin** 吳瑾 341
- Wu-chin** 武進 county 155
- Wu ching ssu shu ta ch'üan** 丘經四書大全 (Great compendium of the five classics and the four books) 219
- Wu ching ta ch'üan** 丘經大全 729
- Wu-chou** 婺州, Chekiang 56
- Wu-chou** 梧州, Kwangsi 97
- Ch'ing attacks on 681, 683, 685
and the Yung-li court 676, 678, 690
659 map28, 664 map29
- Wu Chung** 吳中 211, 278
- Wu chung shui li ch'üan shu** 吳中水利全書 776
- wu-chü** 武舉 (military examinations) 375
- Wu-chün ying** 五軍營 (Camp of the Five Armies) 248
- Wu Gate** 午門 (of the Forbidden City) 411, 412, 417, 423, 476
see also Meridian Gate
- Wu Han** 吳晗 784–5, 787, 788, 794, 795
- Wu-han** 武漢 40, 41, 682
- Wu-hsi** 無錫 539, 592; 253 map14
- Wu hsüeh pien** 吾學編 730, 757
- Wu-hu** 無湖 645, 658, 660; 253 map14, 659 map28
- Wu-kang** 武岡 682; 659 map28, 664 map29
- Wu-kung**, earl of 武功伯, *see* Hsü Yu-chen
- Wu Mountain Gorge** 巫山峽 622
- Wu** 吴 party 687–8, 691–2
- Wu pei chih** 武備志 771, 775
- Wu P'u** 吳樸 759
- Wu** 吴 region 32, 98; 19 map2 defined 64
- Wu** 吴 reign 108, 109
- Wu-sa** 烏撒 144; 145 map7
- Wu San-kuei** 吳三桂 639, 639 n166, 651–2, 707, 709–10
- Wu Shen** 吳甡 623
- Wu Sheng-chao** 吳勝兆 694
- Wu-sung River** 吳淞江 500; 497 map23
- Wu-t'ai Mountains** 吳台山 263
- Wu Tan-ko** 吳丹戈 795
- Wu Ting** 武丁 440 n1
- Wu-ting**, marquis of 武定侯, *see* Kuo Hsün

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

972

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Wu tsu tsu* 吳雜俎 766
Wu-tsung 武宗, *see* Chu Hou-chao
Wu-tsung 武宗, *see* Khaishan
Wu-tsung shih lu 武宗實錄 742, 743
Wu-tsung wai chi 武宗外紀 799
Wu wang 吳王 (Wu, Prince of) *see* Chu Yüan-chang
Wu-wang Chang Shih-ch'eng tsai chi 吳王張士誠載記 785
Wu-wei 武威 129
Wu-ying Palace 武英殿 639, 658
Wu Yu-jen 吳友仁 127
Wu Yung 吳庸 151
Wu-yüan 婁源 148
Wu Yün-ch'eng 吳允誠, *see* Batu Temür 206
- Xavier, Francisco 562
- Ya-ku Pass* 鴉鶻關 582; 578 map25
Yalu River 鴨綠江 167, 266, 568, 601; 569 map24, 578 map25
Yamamoto Tatsurō 山本達郎 794
Yamane Yukio 山根幸夫 806
yamen 衙門 153, 386, 469, 626, 662, 680, 778
Yang Ching 楊靖 76, 89, 97, 101, 179
Yang-chou 揚州 93, 432
 captured by Chu Ti 200
 as Chang Shih-ch'eng's base 31
Ch'ing conquest of 656–7
 conquered by the Ming 71
 and Dash Temür 33
 as garrison 13
 Nanking compared with 70
 as Shih K'o-fa's headquarters 644–5
 197 map8, 253 map14, 431
 map22, 497 map23
Yang Feng-pao 楊鳳苞 813
Yang Hao 楊鎬 572–3, 577–83
 and 1619 campaign against
- Nurhaci 578 map25
Yang-ho 陽和 322, 324, 328; 323 map16
Yang Ho 楊鶴 615–16, 621, 628
Yang Hsien 楊憲 113
Yang Hung 揚洪 327
Yang I 楊宜 499
Yang I-ch'ing 楊一清 410, 417, 434, 448–9, 455 n17, 456
Yang Jung 楊榮 (1371–1440) 791, 792
 as advisor to the Hung-hsi emperor 277–84
 and Chu Kao-hsü's rebellion 289–90
 as grand secretary 209, 210, 306–7
 see also Three Yangs
Yang Jung 楊榮 (d. 1606) 531
Yang Lien 楊漣 594, 596–7, 606, 607–8
Yang Öljei 楊完者 80
Yang Po 楊博 520
Yang P'u 楊溥 791
 as advisor to the Hung-hsi emperor 277–84
 as grand secretary 306–8
 see also Three Yangs
Yang Shan 楊善 320, 332, 338, 340
Yang-shan 羊山 Island 719; 696
 map30
Yang Shen 楊慎 456, 735
Yang Shih-ch'i 楊士奇 791
 as advisor to the Hsüan-te emperor 290, 302
 as advisor to the Hung-hsi emperor 277–84
 as grand secretary 209, 306–8, 332
 imprisoned 210
 as Yang Wen-chen 751
 see also Three Yangs
Yang Shih-chiao 楊時喬 541
Yang Shih-ning 楊時寧 772

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

973

- Yang Ssu-ch'ang 楊嗣昌 527–32, 634
- Yang Su 楊蘇 28
- Yang T'ing-ho 楊廷和 428, 437–9, 441–9, 453–6, 465, 485, 800
- Yang Wei-yüan 楊維垣 648
- Yang Wen-chen 楊文貞, *see* Yang Shih-ch'i
- Yang Wen-chung san lu* 楊文忠三錄 800
- Yang Ying-lung 楊應龍 564–5, 579
- Yangtze River 楊子江 13, 23, 25, 26, 32, 70
as defense line 191, 645, 658
delta of 8, 71, 72–94, 490–510, 539, 585, 610, 648, 660–3, 670, 679, 694, 716, 716 n75, 717–21, 726, 802
and the Grand Canal 643, 658; 253 map14
historical sources for 776
and natural disasters 496, 503
and rebellion of Chu Ti 197 map8
rebellions along 58, 65, 93, 100–1, 125–7, 622–3, 630, 655
travel along 418, 498, 587
19 map2, 75 map3, 121 maps, 126 map6, 624–5 map26, 659 map28, 696 map30, 713 map31
- Yao-chu 咬住 161–2
- Yao-erh-ling 鶴兒嶺 324
- Yao Hsi-meng 姚希孟 620
- Yao Kuang-hsiao 姚廣孝 191, 194, 215, 220–1
as Kuang-hsiao 148
as Tao-yen 148, 191
- Yao 瑤 (猺) people 347
1450–52 uprising of 336
1464–66 rebellion of 377–80
- Yao Shun-mu 姚舜牧 759
- Yarlung 雅魯 262
- Yeh Ch'un-chi 葉春及 780
- Yeh Hsiang-kao 葉向高 529, 598, 607
- Yeh-hsien 也先, *see* Esen
- Yeh huo pien* 野獲編, *see* Wan-li
yeh huo pien
- Yeh Po-chü 葉伯巨 136, 175
- Yeh Sheng 葉昇 163
- Yeh-shih* 野史 (nonofficial histories) 759, 764, 808
- Yeh Tsung-liu 集宗留 312–14
- Yehe 葉赫 tribe 575, 577, 579–80
“yellow registers” (*huang-ts'e*) 788;
see also household registration; population
- Yellow River 黃河
bandit activity near 621–3, 635
and Chu Ti 200
course of 655
as defense line 655–6
flooding of 310–12, 331, 334–5, 336, 356–7, 534, 552, 604, 635
and grain transport 252, 587
historical sources on 776
Ming crossing of 97, 116–17
and water conservancy projects 39–40, 46, 59, 60, 334–5, 356–7, 520, 523, 661
19 map2, 253 map14, 624–5
map26, 663 map27, 659 map28
- Yen 燕, Prince of, *see* Chu Kao-chih
- Yen, Prince of 燕王, *see* Chu Ti
- Yen-an 延安 130, 400
- Yen Chi-heng 顏季亨 772
- Yen chiao chi wen* 炎徼紀聞 773
- Yen-chou 嶺州, Chekiang 71, 78, 780
- Yen-chou 袂州, Shantung 171t, 605; 121 maps
- Yen-chou shih liao* 岳州史料 731, 760
- Yen-men Pass 楊門關 102
- Yen-p'ing 延平 310, 313, 674–6; 19 map2, 659 map28, 669 map29
- Yen-p'ing, Prince of 延平王, *see* Cheng Ch'eng-kung

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty, 1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

974

GLOSSARY—INDEX

- Yen-shan 燕山 guards 245–6
Yen-shan t'ang pieh chi 燕山堂別集 731, 760
 Yen Shih-fan 嚴世蕃 484, 505–7
 Yen-Sui [Yen-sui] 延綏 400
 as border garrison 249
 governor of 472
 historical sources for 772
Yen-Sui chen chih 延綏鎮志 772
 Yen Sung 嚴嵩 466, 474–8, 481,
 482–5, 498, 500–7, 512, 528,
 801–2
 Yen Ts'ung-chien 嚴從簡 770
 Yi 李 dynasty 165–7, 268
 Yi Pang-wǒn 李芳遠 268
 Yi Sǒng-gye 李成桂 165–7
 Yi Sun-sin 李舜臣 572–3
 Yi To 李祹 301
Yijo sillok 李朝實錄 301, 792, 795
yin 陰, see salt voucher
yin 陰 (dark force) 481
 Yin, Prince of 伊王 121 maps
 Yin Cheng-mao 殷正茂 520–1
 Yin Chih 尹直 731 nr 3
 Yin 殷 dynasty 440 nr 1
yin-hao 銀號 (assaying shops) 585
 Yin Shou-heng 尹守衡 757
ying 耘 (training camps) 244, 247–8
 Ying, duke of 英國公, *see* Chang Fu
 Ying-ch'ang 應昌 99, 100, 102, 120;
 225 map10
 Ying-chou 順州, Anhwei 40, 42
 Ying-chou 應州, Shansi 420; 419
 map20
 Ying River 穎水 335, 657; 659
 map28
 Ying-t'ien 應天, *see* Nanking
 Ying-tsung 英宗, *see* Chu Ch'i-chen
 Ying-tsung 英宗 (r. 1064–67), *see*
 Chao Shu
Ying-tsung shih lu 英宗實錄 306,
 746, 749
Ying ya sheng lan 瀛涯勝覽 772,
 792
- Yoshikawa Kōjirō 吉川幸次郎 727
 Yoshimitsu 義満 269–70
 as the Ashikaga shōgun 269
 Yoshimochi 義持 270, 300
 Yoshinori 義教 300
yu-chi 遊擊 ("colonel") 570
yu-chi chiang-chün 遊擊將軍
 cavalry general (general in
 control of mobile strikes) 249,
 321
Yu-chün tu-tu fu 右軍都督府, *see*
 Chief Military Commission, of
 the Right
 Yung, Prince of 永王, *see* Chu
 Tz'u-huan
Yung-ch'ang 永昌 129, 314, 315,
 707; 696 map30
 Yung-cheng 雍正 reign 881–12
 Yung-chi 永濟 116
Yung chien lu 永鑒錄 (Record of
 the eternal mirror) 173
Yung ch'uang hsiao p'in 洪幢小品
 765
 Yung-li 永曆 reign, *see* Chu Yu-
 lang
 Yung-lo 永樂 reign, *see* Chu Ti
Yung-lo ta tien 永樂大典 (Great
 literary repository of the Yung-
 lo reign) 220–1, 729, 794
 Yung-ming, Prince of 永明王, *see*
 Chu Yu-lang
 Yung-ming 永明, regent, *see* Chu
 Yu-lang
 Yung-ning 永寧 144; 145 map7
 Yung-p'ing 永平 617
 Yung-shou Palace 永壽宮 465
 Yunnan 雲南 2, 118, 125, 278, 681
 Annam invasion of 230
 and banishment 456
 and Basalawarmi 25, 72
 Chinese conquest of 8, 98, 106
 Ch'ing penetration of 696, 706–8
 and Chu Yün-wen's flight to
 706–8, 730

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

GLOSSARY—INDEX

975

- 1582–84 Burmese and Vietnamese attacks on 557–8
 historical sources for 770 n131, 773, 779
 military affairs in 465
 and Ming Yü-chen 42, 100
 mining in 531
 minority unrest in 602
 Mongol conquest of 314–16
 rebellion in 381, 688
 Shan rebellion in 157
 source for horses 318
 and Sun K'o-wang 702, 705–6
 1381–82 campaign against 143–6
 Toghto exiled to 32
 Wu San-kuei in 709–10
 as Yüan garrison 13
 Yunnan Capital, *see* Yunnan-fu
 Yunnan-fu 雲南府 [Yunnan] 701, 701 n53
 Ch'ing penetration of 706–8
 revolt in 702–3
 and Sun K'o-wang 702
 and Wu San-kuei 709–10
 and the Yung-li court 706, 707, 710
 as Yunnan Capital 706
 664 map29, 696 map30
 yurts 416
yü 議 (draft of imperial orders) 767
 Yü 禹, King 403 n1
 Yü, Prince of 裕王, *see* Chu Tsai-hou
 Yü 於, princess 162
 Yü 爰, surname 69
 Yü Chi-teng 余繼登 802
 Yü Ch'i 余暉 151
Yü chiao chi 駁交記 773
 Yü Ch'ien 于謙 326–8, 332–4, 338–40, 360, 373, 749, 796
 Yü-chou 蔚州 323; 323 map16
 Yü-chüeh Temple 玉覺寺 45
 Yü-hang 餘杭 district 28
 Yü Hsin 郁信 252
Yu kung 禹貢 792
 Yü-lin 榆林 400–2, 422; 390
 map19, 419 map20, 633
 map27
 Yü-ling Pass 显嶺關 28
 Yü-mu ch'uan [Yü-mu-ch'uan]
 榆木川 272; 225 map10, 390
 map19
 Yü Pen 爰本 787
 Yü Shih-chi 爰士吉 268
Yü shih t'ai 御史臺, *see* Tribunal of Censors
 Yü Shih-yüeh 爰士悅 332, 339
 Yü Ta-yu 爰大猷 502–3, 774
Yü-t'ang ts'ung yü 玉堂叢語 765
 Yü T'ung-hai 爰通海 47, 69, 86
 Yü Tzu-chün 余子俊 401–2
 Yü-yao 餘姚 665
 Yü Yü-li 于玉立 549
 Yüan Chi-hsien 袁繼咸 657
 Yüan Chieh 原傑 388–9
 Yüan-chou 沔州, Hunan 144, 705; 696 map30
 Yüan-chou 袁州, Kiangsi 39, 79
 Yüan Ch'ung-huan 袁崇煥 602, 610–11, 613, 616–19
 Yüan 元 dynasty 11
 Central China during 384
 and Chu Hsi's philosophy 218
 conditions at late Yüan court 94–8, 99ff
 eunuchs in 364
 in exile 99–103
 fall of 1, 98, 119, 785
 historical sources for 732, 733, 746, 753, 754, 758, 769
 loyalists 82, 111, 117, 118, 143–4ff
 major discussion of 12–44
 military policies 59, 63
 native chieftainships during 383
 rebellions in the reign of Toghōn Temür 58–98
 scholarship in 729

Cambridge University Press

978-0-521-24332-2 - The Cambridge History of China: Volume 7: The Ming Dynasty,
1368–1644, Part I

Edited by Frederick W. Mote and Denis Twitchett

Index

[More information](#)

976

GLOSSARY – INDEX

- Yüan dynasty (*cont.*)
as source for historical precedent 169
and southwest China 314
and transport systems 251, 252
works from 221
19 map2
- Yüan Hung-tao 袁宏道 546
- Yüan-ling 沔陵 144
- Yüan P'eng-nien 袁彭年 687, 691
- Yüan shih 元史 (Official history of the Yüan) 116, 728, 753, 757, 786
- yüan-shuai 元帥 (commander) 71
- Yüan Tsung-kao 袁宗臯 441, 443
- yüan-wai lang* 員外郎 (vice-director [of a bureau in a ministry]) 742
- Yüan Ying-t'ai 袁應泰 600
- Yüeh-chou 越州 157, 160; 145
map7
- Yüeh-kang 月港 559
- Yün-ch'i 雲奇 141
- Yün-chou 袁州 229 n202
- Yün county 穩縣 383
- Yün-yang 鄖陽 prefecture 384, 388–9; 385 map18
- zebras in tribute trade 235
- Zeelandia Castle 723; 713 map31
- Zen 禪, *see* Buddhism